

# ***TMS320C6000 Chip Support Library API Reference Guide***

Literature Number SPRU401  
March 2000



## **IMPORTANT NOTICE**

Texas Instruments and its subsidiaries (TI) reserve the right to make changes to their products or to discontinue any product or service without notice, and advise customers to obtain the latest version of relevant information to verify, before placing orders, that information being relied on is current and complete. All products are sold subject to the terms and conditions of sale supplied at the time of order acknowledgement, including those pertaining to warranty, patent infringement, and limitation of liability.

TI warrants performance of its semiconductor products to the specifications applicable at the time of sale in accordance with TI's standard warranty. Testing and other quality control techniques are utilized to the extent TI deems necessary to support this warranty. Specific testing of all parameters of each device is not necessarily performed, except those mandated by government requirements.

CERTAIN APPLICATIONS USING SEMICONDUCTOR PRODUCTS MAY INVOLVE POTENTIAL RISKS OF DEATH, PERSONAL INJURY, OR SEVERE PROPERTY OR ENVIRONMENTAL DAMAGE ("CRITICAL APPLICATIONS"). TI SEMICONDUCTOR PRODUCTS ARE NOT DESIGNED, AUTHORIZED, OR WARRANTED TO BE SUITABLE FOR USE IN LIFE-SUPPORT DEVICES OR SYSTEMS OR OTHER CRITICAL APPLICATIONS. INCLUSION OF TI PRODUCTS IN SUCH APPLICATIONS IS UNDERSTOOD TO BE FULLY AT THE CUSTOMER'S RISK.

In order to minimize risks associated with the customer's applications, adequate design and operating safeguards must be provided by the customer to minimize inherent or procedural hazards.

TI assumes no liability for applications assistance or customer product design. TI does not warrant or represent that any license, either express or implied, is granted under any patent right, copyright, mask work right, or other intellectual property right of TI covering or relating to any combination, machine, or process in which such semiconductor products or services might be or are used. TI's publication of information regarding any third party's products or services does not constitute TI's approval, warranty or endorsement thereof.

## Preface

# Read This First

---

---

---

### *About This Manual*

Welcome to the TMS320C6000 Chip Support Library, or CSL for short. The CSL is a set of application programming interfaces (APIs) used to configure and control all on-chip peripherals. It is intended to make it easier for developers by eliminating much of the tedious grunt-work usually needed to get algorithms up and running in a real system. Some of the advantages offered by the CSL include: peripheral ease of use, a level of compatibility between devices, shortened development time, portability, standardization, and hardware abstraction. A version of the CSL is available for all TMS320C6000 devices.

This document contains a reference for the CSL APIs and is organized as follows:

- ☐ Overview – a high level overview of the CSL
- ☐ CSL API Module Descriptions – a description of the individual CSL API modules
- ☐ CSL API Functions – a brief description of all CSL API functions in table format
- ☐ CSL API Reference – an alphabetical listing of all CSL API identifiers
- ☐ HAL Reference – a low-level reference of the hardware abstraction layer listing all macros and constants for manipulating the peripheral registers

### *How to Use This Manual*

The information in this document describes the contents of the TMS320C6000 chip support library in several different ways.

- ☐ Chapter 1 provides an overview of the CSL and its 2-layer architecture consisting of the service layer and the hardware abstraction layer (HAL).
- ☐ Chapter 2 provides an introduction to the service-layer API modules and gives a description of each in alphabetical order together with tables showing the various functions, macros, constants, etc., and a section and page

reference for more detailed information about each. This chapter is intended for those who want to understand the internal workings of the service layer APIs.

- ❑ Chapter 3 provides a quick overview of all CSL API functions in table format for easy reference. The information shown for each function includes the syntax, a brief description, and a page reference for obtaining more detailed information.
- ❑ Chapter 4 provides an alphabetical listing of the CSL service-layer API functions, enumerations, type definitions, macros, structures, constants, and global variables. This chapter uses examples to show how these elements are used.
- ❑ Chapter 5 contains an alphabetical reference of the chip support library hardware abstraction layer (CSL HAL).

## ***Notational Conventions***

This document uses the following conventions:

- ❑ Program listings, program examples, and interactive displays are shown in a `special typeface`.
- ❑ In syntax descriptions, the function or macro appears in a **bold typeface** and the parameters appear in plainface within parentheses. Portions of a syntax that are in **bold** should be entered as shown; portions of a syntax that are within parentheses describe the type of information that should be entered.
- ❑ Macro names are written in uppercase text; function names are written in lowercase.
- ❑ TMS320C6000 devices are referred to throughout this reference guide as 'C6201, 'C6202, etc.

## ***Related Documentation From Texas Instruments***

The following books describe the TMS320C6x devices and related support tools. To obtain a copy of any of these TI documents, call the Texas Instruments Literature Response Center at (800) 477–8924. When ordering, please identify the book by its title and literature number. Many of these documents can be found on the Internet at <http://www.ti.com>.

***TMS320C62x/C67x Technical Brief*** (literature number SPRU197) gives an introduction to the 'C62x/C67x digital signal processors, development tools, and third-party support.

**TMS320C6000 CPU and Instruction Set Reference Guide** (literature number SPRU189) describes the 'C6000 CPU architecture, instruction set, pipeline, and interrupts for these digital signal processors.

**TMS320C6201/C6701 Peripherals Reference Guide** (literature number SPRU190) describes common peripherals available on the TMS320C6201/6701 digital signal processors. This book includes information on the internal data and program memories, the external memory interface (EMIF), the host port interface (HPI), multichannel buffered serial ports (McBSPs), direct memory access (DMA), enhanced DMA (EDMA), expansion bus, clocking and phase-locked loop (PLL), and the power-down modes.

**TMS320C6000 Programmer's Guide** (literature number SPRU198) describes ways to optimize C and assembly code for the TMS320C6000 DSPs and includes application program examples.

**TMS320C6000 Assembly Language Tools User's Guide** (literature number SPRU186) describes the assembly language tools (assembler, linker, and other tools used to develop assembly language code), assembler directives, macros, common object file format, and symbolic debugging directives for the 'C6000 generation of devices.

**TMS320C6000 Optimizing C Compiler User's Guide** (literature number SPRU187) describes the 'C6000 C compiler and the assembly optimizer. This C compiler accepts ANSI standard C source code and produces assembly language source code for the 'C6000 generation of devices. The assembly optimizer helps you optimize your assembly code.

**TMS320C62x DSP Library** (literature number SPRU402) describes the 32 high-level, C-callable, optimized DSP functions for general signal processing, math, and vector operations.

**TMS320C62x Image/Video Processing Library** (literature number SPRU400) describes the optimized image/video processing functions including many C-callable, assembly-optimized, general-purpose image/video processing routines.



# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1-1</b>
	<i>Provides an overview of the chip support library (CSL) and its two-layer architecture.</i>	
1.1	CSL Overview	1-2
1.2	HAL Overview	1-4
1.3	Service Layer Overview	1-5
<b>2</b>	<b>CSL API Module Descriptions</b>	<b>2-1</b>
	<i>Describes the purpose of the individual CSL application programming interface (API) modules and how they work.</i>	
2.1	CSL API Module Introduction	2-2
2.2	CACHE	2-6
2.3	CSL	2-7
2.4	DAT	2-8
2.5	CHIP	2-10
2.6	DMA	2-11
2.7	EDMA	2-13
2.8	EMIF	2-15
2.9	HPI	2-16
2.10	IRQ	2-17
2.11	MCBSP	2-18
2.12	PWR	2-20
2.13	STDINC	2-21
2.14	TIMER	2-22
<b>3</b>	<b>CSL API Function Tables</b>	<b>3-1</b>
	<i>Provides tables containing all CSL API Functions, a brief description of each, and a page reference for more detailed information.</i>	
3.1	CSL Function Tables	3-2

<b>4</b>	<b>CSL API Reference</b>	<b>4-1</b>
	<i>Provides an alphabetical list of the CSL service layer API functions. Includes enumerations, type definitions, macros, structures, constants, and global variables.</i>	
4.1	CSL API Reference Introduction	4-2
4.2	CACHE	4-3
4.3	CSL	4-10
4.4	DAT	4-11
4.5	CHIP	4-19
4.6	DMA	4-22
4.7	EDMA	4-51
4.8	EMIF	4-69
4.9	HPI	4-81
4.10	IRQ	4-84
4.11	MCBSP	4-87
4.12	PWR	4-114
4.13	STDINC	4-117
4.14	TIMER	4-119
<b>5</b>	<b>HAL Reference</b>	<b>5-1</b>
	<i>Contains an alphabetical reference of the chip support library hardware abstraction layer (CSL HAL).</i>	
5.1	HAL Reference Introduction	5-2
5.2	HCACHE	5-4
5.3	HCHIP	5-7
5.4	HDMA	5-14
5.5	HEDMA	5-17
5.6	HEMIF	5-30
5.7	HHPI	5-32
5.8	HIRQ	5-33
5.9	HMCBSP	5-34
5.10	HPWR	5-41
5.11	HTIMER	5-42
<b>A</b>	<b>Glossary</b>	<b>A-1</b>
	<i>Explains terms, abbreviations, and acronyms used throughout this book.</i>	



# Figures

1-1	CSL Layers .....	1-3
1-2	API Modules within Service Layer .....	1-5
4-1	2D Transfer .....	4-14

# Tables

3-1	CACHE .....	3-2
3-2	CSL .....	3-2
3-3	DAT .....	3-3
3-4	CHIP .....	3-3
3-5	DMA .....	3-4
3-6	EDMA .....	3-6
3-7	EMIF .....	3-7
3-8	HPI .....	3-8
3-9	IRQ .....	3-8
3-10	MCBSP .....	3-9
3-11	PWR .....	3-10
3-12	TIMER .....	3-11
4-1	CSL API Module Support for TMS320C6000 Devices .....	4-2

# Introduction

This chapter provides an overview of the chip support library (CSL) and its two-layer architecture.

Topic	Page
1.1 CSL Overview .....	1-2
1.2 HAL Overview .....	1-4
1.3 Service Layer Overview .....	1-5

## 1.1 CSL Overview

The CSL is written primarily in C with some assembly language where needed. The library is made up of discrete modules that are built and archived into a library file. Each module represents an individual API and is referred to simply as an API module. The module granularity is architected such that each peripheral is covered by a single API module. Hence, there is a DMA API module for the DMA peripheral, a MCBSP API module for the McBSP peripheral, and so on.

Current List of CSL API Modules:

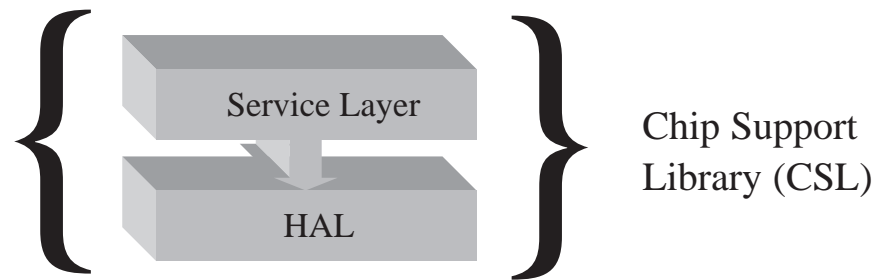
<input type="checkbox"/> CACHE	cache module
<input type="checkbox"/> CSL	top-level module
<input type="checkbox"/> DAT	device independent data copy/fill module
<input type="checkbox"/> CHIP	chip specific module
<input type="checkbox"/> DMA	direct memory access module
<input type="checkbox"/> EDMA	enhanced direct memory access module
<input type="checkbox"/> EMIF	external memory interface module
<input type="checkbox"/> HPI	host port interface module
<input type="checkbox"/> IRQ	interrupt controller module
<input type="checkbox"/> MCBSP	multichannel buffered serial port module
<input type="checkbox"/> PWR	power down module
<input type="checkbox"/> STDINC	standard include module
<input type="checkbox"/> TIMER	timer module

Although each API module is unique, there exists some interdependency between the modules. For example, the DMA module depends on the IRQ module because of DMA interrupts. This comes into play when linking code because if you use the DMA module, the IRQ module automatically gets linked also.

The CSL is architected using a two-layer approach: the top layer is the *service layer* and the bottom layer is the *hardware abstraction layer* or *HAL*. This is illustrated in Figure 1–1, *CSL Layers*.

**Note:** The CSL depends on DSP/BIOS for its hardware interrupt dispatcher. Hence, you must create a DSP/BIOS application with your Code Composer Studio project to use the CSL.

Figure 1–1. CSL Layers



## 1.2 HAL Overview

The hardware abstraction layer, or HAL, is a set of constants and macros that fully describes the peripheral registers by way of symbols. It is capable of hiding subtle differences between devices such as bit-fields changing size or position within a register. In addition, the HAL can substitute a NULL register in the case where a register is supported on one device but not another. The whole purpose of the HAL is to provide the service layer a symbolic interface into the hardware. It is not intended as a user interface or API. This is explained further in section 1.3 , *Service Layer Overview*.

### ***What the CSL HAL Offers:***

- ☐ Symbol definitions for every peripheral register
  - HPER\_REG\_ADDR
  - HPER\_REG
- ☐ Symbol definitions for every bit-field of every peripheral register
  - HPER\_REG\_FIELD\_MASK
  - HPER\_REG\_FIELD\_SHIFT
- ☐ Macro definitions to get and set any field of any peripheral register
  - HPER\_REG\_FIELD\_GET()
  - HPER\_REG\_FIELD\_SET()
- ☐ Macro definitions to get and set any peripheral register
  - HPER\_REG\_GET()
  - HPER\_REG\_SET()
- ☐ Macro definitions to configure any peripheral register based on field values
  - HPER\_REG\_CFG()

HPER – peripheral module name, ex. DMA

REG – peripheral register name, ex. PRICTL

FIELD – peripheral register field name, ex. ESIZE

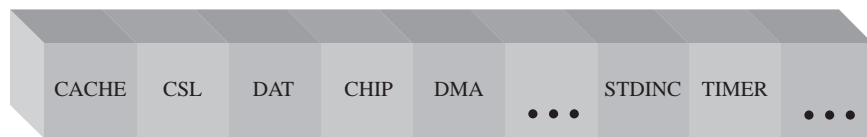
For a complete reference of the HAL, see Chapter 5, *HAL Reference*.

### 1.3 Service Layer Overview

The service layer is where the actual APIs are defined and is the layer the user interfaces to. It is possible for the user to interface directly into the HAL but this is not advisable because it could have undesired side effects on the operation of the service layer APIs. For example, you would not want to use the HAL to directly write to a DMA register while that register is in use by the DMA service layer API. If however, the user decides not to use the service layer at all, the HAL is available and can still save the user time and effort.

Figure 1–2 illustrates the individual API modules within the service layer. This architecture allows for future expansion of the CSL because new API modules can be added to the service layer as new peripheral devices emerge.

Figure 1–2. API Modules within Service Layer



It is important to note that not all devices support all API modules. This depends on if the device actually has the peripheral that an API covers. For example, the EDMA API module is not supported on a 'C6201 because this device does not have an EDMA peripheral. Other modules, however, are supported on all devices such as the IRQ module. As will be shown later in the *API Reference* section, each module has a compile time constant symbol defined that denotes if the module is supported or not for a given device. For example, the symbol `EDMA_SUPPORT` has a value of 1 if the current device supports it, and a value of 0 otherwise. You can use these support symbols in their application code to make decisions if so desired.

**Note:**

When using the CSL, it is up to the user to define a project-wide symbol from a predetermined set to identify which device is being used. This device identification symbol is then used in the CSL header files to conditionally define the support symbols. See the CHIP API reference (section 4.5, CHIP, on page 4-19) for more information.





# CSL API Module Descriptions

This chapter describes the purpose of the individual CSL API modules within the chip support library (CSL) and explains how they work. This information is intended for those who want to understand the internal workings of the service layer APIs.

Topic	Page
2.1 CSL API Module Introduction .....	2-2
2.2 CACHE .....	2-6
2.3 CSL .....	2-7
2.4 DAT .....	2-8
2.5 CHIP .....	2-10
2.6 DMA .....	2-11
2.7 EDMA .....	2-13
2.8 EMIF .....	2-15
2.9 HPI .....	2-16
2.10 IRQ .....	2-17
2.11 MCBSP .....	2-18
2.12 PWR .....	2-20
2.13 STDINC .....	2-21
2.14 TIMER .....	2-22

## 2.1 CSL API Module Introduction

There are certain methods used across different modules that are worth mentioning at the global level.

### ***OPEN and CLOSE Functions***

Peripherals that have multiple channels, ports, etc. must be managed as resources in a shared environment. The CSL APIs allow for this by way of *Open* and *Close* API functions. For example, a piece of application code can open a DMA channel for exclusive use. This precludes any other part of the program from opening the same DMA channel. If the resource is no longer needed, it can be freed up by closing it. The methodology used is the *handle* concept. You obtain a peripheral handle by calling the *Open* function for that peripheral. This handle is then used in all subsequent API calls for that peripheral. This of course only applies to peripheral devices that have multiple channels or ports such as the DMA, McBSP, and timer. Other peripherals such as the EMIF need no such resource management and do not have handle based API calls.

### ***MK Macros***

Another method that many of the API modules share is the idea of the *MK* macro that stands for *make*. Inevitably when configuring peripherals, you will have to set some registers to some values. It can be painstaking work to calculate bit-field values and then shift-merge them all together to form a register value. To make this easier, the API modules define *MK* macros. These macros take individual right-justified field values as arguments and form the merged value. In addition, symbolic constants are provided that may be used for the field values. To illustrate, consider a hypothetical register named REG that is part of a peripheral named PER. This register has 5 fields, F0, F1, F2, F3, and F4. The *MK* macro will look like this:

```
PER_MK_REG(f0, f1, f2, f3, f4)
```

Additionally, there will be field value constants similar to the following:

```
PER_REG_F0_VAL0
PER_REG_F0_VAL1
PER_REG_F1_VAL0
...
PER_REG_F4_VAL3
```

This macro may be used several ways. You can use it without the symbolic constants like this:

```
val = PER_MK_REG(0,4,1,3,8);
```

or, to make your code more readable and self-documenting, you can use the symbolic constants for the field values like this:

```
val = PER_MK_REG(
    PER_REG_F0_VAL0,
    PER_REG_F1_VAL1,
    PER_REG_F2_VAL1,
    PER_REG_F3_VAL0,
    PER_REG_F4_VAL3
);
```

You could just as well use variables for the field values. If you used all constants for the field values, the whole macro resolves down to a single constant number at compile time.

A couple rules apply to these macros:

- ☐ Only writeable register fields are arguments, no read-only fields
- ☐ The register field arguments are specified least-significant first
- ☐ If a field is not implemented for a particular device, use the `PER_REG_FIELD_NA` value

### ***Initializing the Registers of a Peripheral***

Related to the *MK* macros is a pair of functions and a structure definition that many of the API modules implement. The two functions are *PER\_ConfigA()* and *PER\_ConfigB()* and the structure is *PER\_CONFIG* where *PER* is the peripheral module name such as DMA. These functions along with the structure give you two ways of initializing the registers of a peripheral. Using method A, you initialize a configuration structure with the appropriate register values. Then you pass the address of this structure to the *ConfigA* function that in turn initializes the peripheral registers with the values in the structure. The other method (method B) does not use the configuration structure; instead, you pass the register values as individual arguments to the *ConfigB* function. The two methods may be used interchangeably. Using either of the two methods, you still have to come up with the register values. This is where the *MK* (make) macros help: you can use the macros inside of the structure initializer or you can use them in place of the arguments when calling the *ConfigB* function.

Consider this hypothetical example:

```
PER_CONFIG MyConfig = {  
    reg0 val,  
    reg1 val,  
    ...  
};  
...  
PER_ConfigA(&MyConfig);
```

Or for method B:

```
PER_ConfigB(reg0 val, reg1 val, ...);
```

### ***Function Inlining***

Another topic that is global to the API modules is function inlining. It turns out that a high percentage of the API functions are very short, setting a single register bit for example. For these small functions, it does not make sense to always incur the overhead of a C function call. So, the API declares them as *static inline* when the user enables inlining. You can actually reduce code size by

enabling inlining when the functions are very small. This is because the size of the function is smaller than the state saving code required to call the function if it were not inlined. The API reference does not state which functions are inlined and which are not: this allows for future changes. You should see an increase in CSL code performance when you enable function inlining.

## 2.2 CACHE

The CACHE module offers a small set of API functions for managing data and program cache. The CACHE module includes:

- ❑ Constant
  - `CACHE_SUPPORT`
- ❑ Functions
  - `CACHE_Clean`
  - `CACHE_EnableCaching`
  - `CACHE_Flush`
  - `CACHE_GetL2SramSize`
  - `CACHE_Invalidate`
  - `CACHE_Reset`
  - `CACHE_SetL2Mode`
  - `CACHE_SetPccMode`

### ***CACHE Architectures***

Currently, there are two cache architectures used on 'C6x devices. The first type, which is present on the '6201 device, provides program cache by disabling on-chip program RAM and turning it into cache. The second type, which is present on the '6211 device, is the newer two-level (L2) cache architecture.

The CACHE module has APIs that are specific for the L2 cache and specific for the older program cache architecture. However, the API functions are callable on both types of platforms to make application code portable. On devices without L2, the L2-specific cache API calls do nothing but return immediately.

For additional information about the CACHE module, refer to Table 3–1 on page 3-2 and Section 4.2 on page 4-3.

## 2.3 CSL

The CSL module is the top-level API module whose primary purpose is to initialize the library. Only one function is exported:

❑ `CSL_Init()`

The *CSL\_Init()* function must be called once at the beginning of your program before calling any other CSL API functions.

For additional information about the CSL module, refer to Table 3–2 on page 3-2 and Section 4.3 on page 4-10.

## 2.4 DAT

The DAT module, which stands for data, is used to move data around by means of DMA/EDMA hardware. This module serves as a level of abstraction such that it works the same for devices that have the DMA peripheral and devices that have the EDMA peripheral. So if you write application code that uses the DAT module, it is compatible across all current devices without worrying about what type of DMA controller it has. The DAT module includes:

- Constants

- DAT\_SUPPORT

- Functions

- DAT\_Close

- DAT\_Copy

- DAT\_Fill

- DAT\_Open

- DAT\_Wait

- DAT\_Copy2D

### ***DAT Routines***

The DAT module is intentionally kept simple. There are routines to copy data from one location to another and to also fill a region of memory. These operations occur in the background on dedicated DMA hardware independent of the CPU. Because of this asynchronous nature, there is API support that enables waiting until a given copy/fill operation completes. It works like this: call one of the copy/fill functions and get an ID number as a return value. Then use this ID number later on to wait for the operation to complete. This allows the operation to be submitted and performed in the background while the CPU performs other tasks in the foreground. Then as needed, the CPU may block on completion of the operation before moving on.

### ***DMA/EDMA Management***

Since the DAT module uses the DMA/EDMA peripheral, it must do so in a managed way. In other words, it must not use a DMA channel that is already allocated by the application. To ensure this doesn't happen, the DAT module must be opened before use, this is accomplished using the `DAT_Open( )` API function. Opening the DAT module allocates a DMA channel for exclusive use. If the module is no longer needed, the DMA resource may be freed up by closing the DAT module, i.e. `DAT_Close( )`.



**Note:**

For devices that have EDMA, the DAT module uses the quick DMA feature. This means that the module doesn't have to internally allocate a DMA channel. However, you are still required to open the DAT module before use.

***Devices With DMA***

On devices such as the '6201 that have the DMA peripheral, only one request may be active at once since only one DMA channel is used. If you submit two requests back to back, the first one will be programmed into the DMA hardware immediately but the second one will have to wait until the first completes. The APIs will block (spin) if called while a request is still busy by polling the transfer complete interrupt flag. The completion interrupt is not actually enabled to eliminate the overhead of taking an interrupt but the interrupt flag is still active.

***Devices With EDMA***

On devices with EDMA, it is possible to have multiple requests pending because of hardware request queues. Each call into the `DAT_Copy()` or `DAT_Fill()` functions return a unique transfer ID number. This ID number is then used by the user to wait for transfer completion. The ID number allows the library to distinguish between multiple pending transfers. As with the DMA, transfer completion is determined by monitoring EDMA transfer complete codes (interrupt flags).

For additional information about the DAT module, refer to Table 3–3 on page 3-3 and Section 4.4 on page 4-11.

## 2.5 CHIP

The CHIP module is where chip-specific and chip-related code resides. This module has the potential to grow in the future as more devices are placed on the market. Currently, CHIP has some API functions for obtaining device endianness, memory map mode if applicable, and CPU and REV IDs. The CHIP module includes:

- Constants

- `CHIP_6XXX`
- `CHIP_SUPPORT`

- Functions

- `CHIP_GetCpuId`
- `CHIP_GetEndian`
- `CHIP_GetMapMode`
- `CHIP_GetRevId`

For additional information about the CHIP module, refer to Table 3–4 on page 3-3 and Section 4.5 on page 4-19.

## 2.6 DMA

Currently, there are two DMA architectures used on 'C6x devices: DMA and EDMA (enhanced DMA). Devices such as the '6201 have the DMA peripheral, whereas the '6211 has the EDMA peripheral. The two architectures are different enough to warrant a separate API module for each. The DMA module includes:

### ☐ Constants

- DMA\_CHA\_CNT
- DMA\_SUPPORT

### ☐ Functions

- DMA\_AllocGlobalReg
- DMA\_AutoStart
- DMA\_Close
- DMA\_ConfigA
- DMA\_ConfigB
- DMA\_FreeGlobalReg
- DMA\_GetEventId
- DMA\_GetGlobalReg
- DMA\_GetStatus
- DMA\_Open
- DMA\_Pause
- DMA\_Reset
- DMA\_SetAuxCtl
- DMA\_SetGlobalReg
- DMA\_Start
- DMA\_Stop
- DMA\_Wait

### ☐ Macros

- DMA\_CLEAR\_CONDITION
- DMA\_GET\_CONDITION

### ☐ Macros (cont.)

- DMA\_MK\_AUXCTL
- DMA\_MK\_DST
- DMA\_MK\_GBLADDR
- DMA\_MK\_GBLCNT
- DMA\_MK\_GBLIDX
- DMA\_MK\_PRICTL
- DMA\_MK\_SECCTL
- DMA\_MK\_SRC
- DMA\_MK\_XFRCNT

□ Structure

- DMA\_CONFIG

### ***Using a DMA Channel***

To use a DMA channel, you must first open it and obtain a device handle using `DMA_Open()`. Once opened, you use the device handle to call the other API functions. The channel may be configured by passing a `DMA_CONFIG` structure to `DMA_ConfigA()` or by passing register values to the `DMA_ConfigB()` function. To assist in creating register values, there are *DMA\_MK* (make) macros that construct register values based on field values. Additionally, there are symbol constants that may be used for the field values.

There are functions for managing shared global DMA registers, `DMA_AllocGlobalReg()`, `DMA_FreeGlobalReg()`, `DMA_SetGlobalReg()`, and `DMA_GetGlobalReg()`.

For additional information about the DMA module, refer to Table 3–5 on page 3-4 and Section 4.6 on page 4-22.

## 2.7 EDMA

Currently, there are two DMA architectures used on 'C6x devices, DMA and EDMA (enhanced DMA). Devices such as the '6201 have the DMA peripheral whereas the '6211 has the EDMA peripheral. The two architectures are different enough to warrant a separate API module for each. The EDMA module includes:

### ☐ Constants

- EDMA\_CHA\_CNT
- EDMA\_SUPPORT
- EDMA\_TABLE\_CNT

### ☐ Functions

- EDMA\_AllocTable
- EDMA\_ClearChannel
- EDMA\_Close
- EDMA\_ConfigA
- EDMA\_ConfigB
- EDMA\_DisableChannel
- EDMA\_EnableChannel
- EDMA\_FreeTable
- EDMA\_GetChannel
- EDMA\_GetPriQStatus
- EDMA\_GetScratchAddr
- EDMA\_GetScratchSize
- EDMA\_GetTableAddress
- EDMA\_Open
- EDMA\_Reset
- EDMA\_SetChannel

### ☐ Macros

- EDMA\_MK\_CNT
- EDMA\_MK\_DST

### ☐ Macros (cont.)

- `EDMA_MK_IDX`
- `EDMA_MK_OPT`
- `EDMA_MK_RLD`
- `EDMA_MK_SRC`

□ Structure

- `EDMA_CONFIG`

### ***Using an EDMA Channel***

To use an EDMA channel, you must first open it and obtain a device handle using `EDMA_Open()`. Once opened, use the device handle to call the other API functions. The channel may be configured by passing an `EDMA_CONFIG` structure to `EDMA_ConfigA()` or by passing register values to the `EDMA_ConfigB()` function. To assist in creating register values, there are *EDMA\_MK* (make) macros that construct register values based on field values. Additionally, there are symbol constants that may be used for the field values.

There are functions for managing parameter RAM (PRAM) tables, `EDMA_AllocTable()` and `EDMA_FreeTable()`.

For additional information about the EDMA module, refer to Table 3–6 on page 3-6 and Section 4.7 on page 4-51.

## 2.8 EMIF

The EMIF module has a simple API for configuring the EMIF registers.

The EMIF may be configured by passing an `EMIF_CONFIG` structure to `EMIF_ConfigA()` or by passing register values to the `EMIF_ConfigB()` function. To assist in creating register values, there are *EMIF\_MK*(make) macros that construct register values based on field values. In addition, there are symbol constants that may be used for the field values. The EMIF module includes:

- ❑ Constant
  - `EMIF_SUPPORT`
- ❑ Functions
  - `EMIF_ConfigA`
  - `EMIF_ConfigB`
- ❑ Macros
  - `EMIF_MK_CECTL`
  - `EMIF_MK_GBLCTL`
  - `EMIF_MK_SDCTL`
  - `EMIF_MK_SDEXT`
  - `EMIF_MK_SDTIM`
- ❑ Typedef
  - `EMIF_CONFIG`

For additional information about the EMIF module, refer to Table 3–7 on page 3-7 and Section 4.8 on page 4-69.

## 2.9 HPI

The HPI module has a simple API for configuring the HPI registers. Functions are provided for reading HPI status bits and setting interrupt events. The HPI module includes:

- Constant
  - HPI\_SUPPORT
- Functions
  - HPI\_GetDspint
  - HPI\_GetEventId
  - HPI\_GetFetch
  - HPI\_GetHint
  - HPI\_GetHrdy
  - HPI\_GetHwob
  - HPI\_SetDspint
  - HPI\_SetHint

For additional information about the HPI module, refer to Table 3–8 on page 3-8 and Section 4.9 on page 4-81.



## 2.10 IRQ

The IRQ module manages CPU interrupts. The IRQ module includes:

### □ Constants

- IRQ\_EVT\_NNNN
- IRQ\_SUPPORT

### □ Functions

- IRQ\_Clear
- IRQ\_Disable
- IRQ\_Enable
- IRQ\_Map
- IRQ\_Set
- IRQ\_Test

## 2.11 MCBSP

The MCBSP module contains a set of API functions for configuring the McBSP registers. The MCBSP module includes:

### ■ Constants

- MCBSP\_PORT\_CNT
- MCBSP\_SUPPORT

### ■ Functions

- MCBSP\_Close
- MCBSP\_ConfigA
- MCBSP\_ConfigB
- MCBSP\_EnableFsync
- MCBSP\_EnableRcv
- MCBSP\_EnableSrgr
- MCBSP\_EnableXmt
- MCBSP\_GetPins
- MCBSP\_GetRcvAddr
- MCBSP\_GetRcvEventId
- MCBSP\_GetXmtAddr
- MCBSP\_GetXmtEventId
- MCBSP\_Open
- MCBSP\_Read
- MCBSP\_Reset
- MCBSP\_Rfull
- MCBSP\_Rrdy
- MCBSP\_RsyncErr
- MCBSP\_SetPins
- MCBSP\_Write
- MCBSP\_Xempty

### ■ Functions (cont.)

- MCBSP\_Xrdy

- MCBSP\_XsyncErr

- Macros

- MCBSP\_MK\_MCR

- MCBSP\_MK\_PCR

- MCBSP\_MK\_RCER

- MCBSP\_MK\_RCR

- MCBSP\_MK\_SPCR

- MCBSP\_MK\_SRGR

- MCBSP\_MK\_XCER

- MCBSP\_MK\_XCR

- Structure

- MCBSP\_CONFIG

### ***Using a MCBSP Port***

To use a MCBSP port, you must first open it and obtain a device handle using `MCBSP_Open()`. Once opened, use the device handle to call the other API functions. The port may be configured by passing a `MCBSP_CONFIG` structure to `MCBSP_ConfigA()` or by passing register values to the `MCBSP_ConfigB()` function. To assist in creating register values, there are *MCBSP\_MK* (make) macros that construct register values based on field values. In addition, there are symbol constants that may be used for the field values.

There are functions for directly reading and writing to the data registers DRR and DXR, `MCBSP_Read()` and `MCBSP_Write()`. The addresses of the DXR and DRR registers are also obtainable for use with DMA configuration, `MCBSP_GetRcvAddr()` and `MCBSP_GetXmtAddr()`.

MCBSP status bits are easily read using efficient inline functions.

For additional information about the MCBSP module, refer to Table 3–10 on page 3-9 and Section 4.11 on page 4-87.

## 2.12 PWR

The PWR module is used to configure the power-down control registers, if applicable, and to invoke various power-down modes. The PWR module includes:

- ❑ Constant
  - PWR\_SUPPORT
- ❑ Functions
  - PWR\_ConfigB
  - PWR\_PowerDown
- ❑ Macro
  - PWR\_MK\_PDCTL

For additional information about the PWR module, refer to Table 3–11 on page 3-10 and Section 4.12 on page 4-114.

## 2.13 STDINC

The STDINC module defines some identifiers that are globally useful to everyone and are used throughout the CSL source code. The application is free to use any identifiers defined here. The main set of identifiers are type definitions for integer data types. The names themselves denote whether the data is signed or unsigned and the number of bits, i.e. 8, 16, 32, or 40. The STDINC module includes:

### ☐ Constants

- FALSE
- INV
- NO
- TRUE
- YES

### ☐ Typedef's

- BOOL
- INT16
- INT32
- INT40
- INT8
- UINT16
- UINT32
- UINT40
- UINT8

## 2.14 TIMER

The TIMER module has a simple API for configuring the timer registers. The TIMER module includes:

- ❑ Constants
  - `TIMER_DEVICE_CNT`
  - `TIMER_SUPPORT`
- ❑ Functions
  - `TIMER_Close`
  - `TIMER_ConfigA`
  - `TIMER_ConfigB`
  - `TIMER_GetCount`
  - `TIMER_GetDatin`
  - `TIMER_GetEventId`
  - `TIMER_GetPeriod`
  - `TIMER_GetTstat`
  - `TIMER_Open`
  - `TIMER_Pause`
  - `TIMER_Reset`
  - `TIMER_Resume`
  - `TIMER_SetCount`
  - `TIMER_SetDatout`
  - `TIMER_SetPeriod`
  - `TIMER_Start`
- ❑ Macro
  - `TIMER_MK_CTL`
- ❑ Structure
  - `TIMER_CONFIG`

### ***Using a TIMER Device***

To use a TIMER device, you must first open it and obtain a device handle using `TIMER_Open( )`. Once opened, use the device handle to call the other API

functions. The timer device may be configured by passing a `TIMER_CONFIG` structure to `TIMER_ConfigA()` or by passing register values to the `TIMER_ConfigB()` function. To assist in creating register values, there are *TIMER\_MK* (make) macros that construct register values based on field values. In addition, there are symbol constants that may be used for the field values.

There is a delay function to do precise delays at the millisecond resolution: `TIMER_Delay()`.

For additional information about the TIMER module, refer to Table 3–12 on page 3-11 and Section 4.14 on page 4-119.





# CSL API Function Tables

This chapter provides tables containing all CSL API functions, a brief description of each, and a page reference for more detailed information.

Topic	Page
<b>3.1 CSL Function Tables</b>	<b>3-2</b>
Table 3-1 CACHE	3-2
Table 3-2 CSL	3-2
Table 3-3 DAT	3-3
Table 3-4 CHIP	3-3
Table 3-5 DMA	3-4
Table 3-6 EDMA	3-6
Table 3-7 EMIF	3-7
Table 3-8 HPI	3-8
Table 3-9 IRQ	3-8
Table 3-10 MCBSP	3-9
Table 3-11 PWR	3-10
Table 3-12 TIMER	3-11

### 3.1 CSL Function Tables

Each of the tables in this section contains information about a specific CSL module and its APIs. The syntax is shown next to a column indicating the type of API: Function, Constant, Macro, or Structure. A brief description of each is provided along with a page reference for more detailed information.

Table 3–1. *CACHE*

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<code>CACHE_Clean</code>	F	Cleans a specific cache region	4-3
<code>CACHE_EnableCaching</code>	F	Enables caching for a specified block of address space	4-4
<code>CACHE_Flush</code>	F	Flushes a region of cache	4-5
<code>CACHE_GetL2SramSize</code>	F	Returns current L2 size configured as SRAM	4-5
<code>CACHE_Invalidate</code>	F	Invalidates a region of cache	4-6
<code>CACHE_Reset</code>	F	Resets cache to power-on default	4-7
<code>CACHE_SetL2Mode</code>	F	Sets L2 cache mode	4-7
<code>CACHE_SetPccMode</code>	F	Sets program cache mode	4-9
<code>CACHE_SUPPORT</code>	C	A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the CACHE module	4-9

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–2. *CSL*

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<code>CSL_Init</code>	F	Initializes the CSL library	4-10

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–3. DAT

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<code>DAT_Close</code>	F	Closes the DAT module	4-11
<code>DAT_Copy</code>	F	Copies a linear block of data from Src to Dst using DMA or EDMA hardware	4-11
<code>DAT_Copy2D</code>	F	Performs a 2-dimensional data copy using DMA or EDMA hardware.	4-13
<code>DAT_Fill</code>	F	Fills a linear block of memory with the specified fill value using DMA or EDMA hardware	4-14
<code>DAT_Open</code>	F	Opens the DAT module	4-16
<code>DAT_SUPPORT</code>	C	A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the DAT module	4-18
<code>DAT_Wait</code>	F	Waits for a previous transfer to complete	4-18

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–4. CHIP

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<code>CHIP_6XXX</code>	C	Current device identification symbols	4-19
<code>CHIP_GetCpuId</code>	F	Returns the CPU ID field of the CSR register	4-20
<code>CHIP_GetEndian</code>	F	Returns the current endian mode of the device	4-20
<code>CHIP_GetMapMode</code>	F	Returns the current map mode of the device	4-21
<code>CHIP_GetRevId</code>	F	Returns the CPU revision ID	4-21
<code>CHIP_SUPPORT</code>	C	A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the CHIP module	4-21

† This speed is only a software variable and in no way affects the actual chip operating frequency

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–5. DMA

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<code>DMA_AutoStart</code>	F	Starts a DMA channel with autoinitialization	4-23
<code>DMA_AllocGlobalReg</code>	F	Provides resource management for the DMA global registers	4-22
<code>DMA_CHA_CNT</code>	C	Number of DMA channels for the current device	4-23
<code>DMA_CLEAR_CONDITION</code>	M	Clears one of the condition flags in the DMA secondary control register	4-24
<code>DMA_Close</code>	F	Closes a DMA channel opened via <code>DMA_Open()</code>	4-24
<code>DMA_CONFIG</code>	S	The DMA configuration structure used to set up a DMA channel	4-25
<code>DMA_ConfigA</code>	F	Sets up the DMA channel using the configuration structure	4-25
<code>DMA_ConfigB</code>	F	Sets up the DMA channel using the register values passed in	4-26
<code>DMA_FreeGlobalReg</code>	F	Frees a global DMA register previously allocated by calling <code>DMA_AllocGlobalReg()</code>	4-27
<code>DMA_GET_CONDITION</code>	M	Gets one of the condition flags in the DMA secondary control register	4-28
<code>DMA_GetEventId</code>	F	Returns the IRQ event ID for the DMA completion interrupt	4-28
<code>DMA_GetGlobalReg</code>	F	Reads a global DMA register that was previously allocated by calling <code>DMA_AllocGlobalReg()</code>	4-29
<code>DMA_GetStatus</code>	F	Reads the status bits of the DMA channel	4-30
<code>DMA_MK_AUXCTL</code>	M	For making a value suitable for the auxiliary control register	4-30
<code>DMA_MK_DST</code>	M	For making a value suitable for the destination address register	4-32
<code>DMA_MK_GBLADDR</code>	M	For making a value suitable for a global address register	4-33
<code>DMA_MK_GBLCNT</code>	M	For making a value suitable for a global count reload register	4-34
<code>DMA_MK_GBLIDX</code>	M	For making a value suitable for a global index register	4-35
<code>DMA_MK_PRICTL</code>	M	For making a value suitable for a primary control register	4-36
<code>DMA_MK_SECCTL</code>	M	For making a value suitable for a secondary control register	4-41
<code>DMA_MK_SRC</code>	M	For making a value suitable for the source address register	4-44
<code>DMA_MK_XFRCNT</code>	M	For making a value suitable for a transfer count register	4-45

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–5. DMA (Continued)

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<code>DMA_Open</code>	F	Opens a DMA channel for use	4-46
<code>DMA_Pause</code>	F	Pauses the DMA channel by setting the START bits in the primary control register appropriately	4-47
<code>DMA_Reset</code>	F	Resets the DMA channel by setting its registers to power-on defaults	4-47
<code>DMA_SetAuxCtl</code>	F	Sets the DMA AUXCTL register	4-48
<code>DMA_SetGlobalReg</code>	F	Sets value of a global DMA register previously allocated by calling <code>DMA_AllocGlobalReg( )</code>	4-48
<code>DMA_Start</code>	F	Starts a DMA channel running without autoinitialization	4-49
<code>DMA_Stop</code>	F	Stops a DMA channel by setting the START bits in the primary control register appropriately	4-49
<code>DMA_SUPPORT</code>	C	A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the DMA module	4-49
<code>DMA_Wait</code>	F	Enters a spin loop that polls the DMA status bits until the DMA completes	4-50

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–6. EDMA

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
EDMA_AllocTable	F	Allocates a parameter RAM table from PRAM	4-51
EDMA_CHA_CNT	C	Number of EDMA channels	4-51
EDMA_ClearChannel	F	Clears the EDMA event flag in the EDMA channel event register	4-52
EDMA_Close	F	Closes a previously opened EDMA channel	4-52
EDMA_CONFIG	S	The EDMA configuration structure used to set up an EDMA channel	4-53
EDMA_ConfigA	F	Sets up the EDMA channel using the configuration structure	4-54
EDMA_ConfigB	F	Sets up the EDMA channel using the EDMA parameter arguments	4-55
EDMA_DisableChannel	F	Disables an EDMA channel	4-56
EDMA_EnableChannel	F	Enables an EDMA channel	4-56
EDMA_FreeTable	F	Frees up a PRAM table previously allocated	4-57
EDMA_GetChannel	F	Returns the current state of the channel event	4-57
EDMA_GetPriQStatus	F	Returns the value of the priority queue status register (PQSR)	4-58
EDMA_GetScratchAddr	F	Returns the starting address of the EDMA PRAM used as non-cacheable on-chip SRAM (scratch area)	4-58
EDMA_GetScratchSize	F	Returns the size (in bytes) of the EDMA PRAM used as non-cacheable on-chip SRAM (scratch area)	4-58
EDMA_GetTableAddress	F	Returns the 32-bit absolute address of the table	4-59
EDMA_MK_CNT	M	For making a value suitable for the EDMA CNT parameter	4-59
EDMA_MK_DST	M	For making a value suitable for the EDMA DST parameter	4-60
EDMA_MK_IDX	M	For making a value suitable for the EDMA IDX parameter	4-61
EDMA_MK_OPT	M	For making a value suitable for the EDMA OPT parameter	4-62
EDMA_MK_RLD	M	For making a value suitable for the EDMA RLD parameter	4-64
EDMA_MK_SRC	M	For making a value suitable for the EDMA SRC parameter	4-65
EDMA_Open	F	Opens an EDMA channel	4-66
EDMA_Reset	F	Resets the given EDMA channel	4-67

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–6. EDMA (Continued)

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<b>EDMA_SetChannel</b>	F	Triggers an EDMA channel by writing to the appropriate bit in the event set register (ESR)	4-68
<b>EDMA_SUPPORT</b>	C	A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the EDMA module	4-68
<b>EDMA_TABLE_CNT</b>	C	A compile time constant that holds the total number of parameter table entries in the EDMA PRAM	4-68

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–7. EMIF

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<b>EMIF_CONFIG</b>	T	Structure used to set up the EMIF peripheral	4-69
<b>EMIF_ConfigA</b>	F	Sets up the EMIF using the configuration structure	4-69
<b>EMIF_ConfigB</b>	F	Sets up the EMIF using the register value arguments	4-70
<b>EMIF_MK_CECTL</b>	M	For making a value suitable for an EMIF CE space control register	4-71
<b>EMIF_MK_GBLCTL</b>	M	For making a value suitable for the EMIF global control register	4-73
<b>EMIF_MK_SDCTL</b>	M	For making a value suitable for the EMIF SDRAM control register	4-75
<b>EMIF_MK_SDEXT</b>	M	For making a value suitable for the EMIF SDRAM extension register	4-77
<b>EMIF_MK_SDTIM</b>	M	For making a value suitable for the EMIF SDRAM timing register	4-79
<b>EMIF_SUPPORT</b>	C	A compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the EMIF module	4-80

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–8. HPI

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<code>HPI_GetDspint</code>	F	Reads the DSPINT bit from the HPIC register	4-81
<code>HPI_GetEventId</code>	F	Obtain the IRQ event associated with the HPI device	4-81
<code>HPI_GetFetch</code>	F	Reads the FETCH flag from the HPIC register and returns its value.	4-81
<code>HPI_GetHint</code>	F	Returns the value of the HINT bit of the HPIC register	4-81
<code>HPI_GetHrdy</code>	F	Returns the value of the HRDY bit of the HPIC register	4-82
<code>HPI_GetHwob</code>	F	Returns the value of the HWOB bit of the HPIC register	4-82
<code>HPI_SetDspint</code>	F	Writes the value to the DSPINT field of the HPIC register	4-82
<code>HPI_SetHint</code>	F	Writes the value to the HINT field of the HPIC register	4-82
<code>HPI_SUPPORT</code>	C	A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the HPI module	4-83

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–9. IRQ

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<code>IRQ_Clear</code>	F	Clears the event flag from the IFR register	4-84
<code>IRQ_Disable</code>	F	Disables the specified event	4-84
<code>IRQ_Enable</code>	F	Enables the specified event	4-84
<code>IRQ_EVT_NNNN</code>	C	These are the IRQ events	4-85
<code>IRQ_Map</code>	F	Maps an event to a physical interrupt number by configuring the interrupt selector MUX registers	4-85
<code>IRQ_Set</code>	F	Sets the specified event by writing to the appropriate ISR register bit	4-86
<code>IRQ_SUPPORT</code>	C	A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the IRQ module	4-86
<code>IRQ_Test</code>	F	Allows testing an event to see if its flag is set in the IFR register	4-86

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef



Table 3–10. MCBSP

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
MCBSP_Close	F	Closes a MCBSP port previously opened via MCBSP_Open( )	4-87
MCBSP_CONFIG	S	Used to setup a MCBSP port	4-87
MCBSP_ConfigA	F	Sets up the MCBSP port using the configuration structure	4-88
MCBSP_ConfigB	F	Sets up the MCBSP port using the register values passed in	4-89
MCBSP_EnableFsync	F	Enables the frame sync generator for the given port	4-90
MCBSP_EnableRcv	F	Enables the receiver for the given port	4-90
MCBSP_EnableSrgr	F	Enables the sample rate generator for the given port	4-90
MCBSP_EnableXmt	F	Enables the transmitter for the given port	4-91
MCBSP_GetPins	F	Reads the values of the port pins when configured as general purpose I/Os	4-91
MCBSP_GetRcvAddr	F	Returns the address of the data receive register (DRR)	4-92
MCBSP_GetRcvEventId	F	Retrieves the receive event ID for the given port	4-92
MCBSP_GetXmtAddr	F	Returns the address of the data transmit register, DXR	4-92
MCBSP_GetXmtEventId	F	Retrieves the transmit event ID for the given port	4-93
MCBSP_MK_MCR	M	Makes a value suitable for the multichannel control register	4-93
MCBSP_MK_PCR	M	Makes a value suitable for the pin control register	4-95
MCBSP_MK_RCER	M	Makes a value suitable for the receive channel enable register	4-97
MCBSP_MK_RCR	M	Makes a value suitable for the receive control register	4-98
MCBSP_MK_SPCR	M	Makes a value suitable for the serial port control register	4-101
MCBSP_MK_SRGR	M	Makes a value suitable for the sample rate generator register	4-103
MCBSP_MK_XCER	M	Makes a value suitable for the transmit channel enable register	4-105
MCBSP_MK_XCR	M	Makes a value suitable for the transmit control register	4-106
MCBSP_Open	F	Opens a MCBSP port for use	4-108
MCBSP_PORT_CNT	C	A compile time constant that holds the number of serial ports present on the current device	4-109

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–10. MCBSP (Continued)

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
MCBSP_Read	F	Performs a direct 32-bit read of the data receive register DRR	4-109
MCBSP_Reset	F	Resets the given serial port	4-109
MCBSP_Rfull	F	Reads the RFULL bit of the serial port control register	4-110
MCBSP_Rrdy	F	Reads the RRDY status bit of the SPCR register	4-110
MCBSP_RsyncErr	F	Reads the RSYNCERR status bit of the SPCR register	4-111
MCBSP_SetPins	F	Sets the state of the serial port pins when configured as general purpose IO	4-111
MCBSP_SUPPORT	C	A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the MCBSP module	4-112
MCBSP_Write	F	Writes a 32-bit value directly to the serial port data transmit register, DXR	4-112
MCBSP_Xempty	F	Reads the XEMPTY bit from the SPCR register	4-112
MCBSP_Xrdy	F	Reads the XRDY status bit of the SPCR register	4-113
MCBSP_XsyncErr	F	Reads the XSYNCERR status bit of the SPCR register	4-113

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–11. PWR

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
PWR_ConfigB	F	Sets up the power-down logic using the register value passed in	4-114
PWR_MK_PDCTL	M	Makes a value suitable for the power-down control register	4-114
PWR_PowerDown	F	Forces the DSP to enter a power-down state	4-115
PWR_SUPPORT	C	A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the PWR module	4-116

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef

Table 3–12. *TIMER*

Syntax	Type	Description	Page
<code>TIMER_Close</code>	F	Closes a previously opened timer device	4-119
<code>TIMER_CONFIG</code>	S	Structure used to set up a timer device	4-119
<code>TIMER_ConfigA</code>	F	Configure timer using configuration structure	4-120
<code>TIMER_ConfigB</code>	F	Sets up the timer using the register values passed in	4-120
<code>TIMER_DEVICE_CNT</code>	C	A compile time constant; number of timer devices present	4-121
<code>TIMER_GetCount</code>	F	Returns the current timer count value	4-121
<code>TIMER_GetDatin</code>	F	Reads the value of the TINP pin	4-121
<code>TIMER_GetEventId</code>	F	Obtains the event ID for the timer device	4-122
<code>TIMER_GetPeriod</code>	F	Returns the period of the timer device	4-122
<code>TIMER_GetTstat</code>	F	Reads the timer status; value of timer output	4-122
<code>TIMER_MK_CTL</code>	M	For making a value suitable for the timer control register	4-123
<code>TIMER_Open</code>	F	Opens a TIMER device for use	4-125
<code>TIMER_Pause</code>	F	Pauses the timer	4-125
<code>TIMER_Reset</code>	F	Resets the timer device	4-126
<code>TIMER_Resume</code>	F	Resumes the timer after a pause	4-126
<code>TIMER_SetCount</code>	F	Sets the count value of the timer	4-126
<code>TIMER_SetDatout</code>	F	Sets the data output value	4-127
<code>TIMER_SetPeriod</code>	F	Sets the timer period	4-127
<code>TIMER_Start</code>	F	Starts the timer device running	4-127
<code>TIMER_SUPPORT</code>	C	A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the TIMER module	4-128

**Note:** F = Function; C = Constant; M = Macro; S = Structure; T = Typedef



# CSL API Reference

This chapter provides an alphabetical list of the chip support library (CSL) service layer API functions, enumerations, type definitions, macros, structures, constants, and global variables.

Topic	Page
4.1 CSL API Reference Introduction .....	4-2
4.2 CACHE .....	4-3
4.3 CSL .....	4-10
4.4 DAT .....	4-11
4.5 CHIP .....	4-19
4.6 DMA .....	4-22
4.7 EDMA .....	4-51
4.8 EMIF .....	4-69
4.9 HPI .....	4-81
4.10 IRQ .....	4-84
4.11 MCBSP .....	4-87
4.12 PWR .....	4-114
4.13 STDINC .....	4-117
4.14 TIMER .....	4-119

## 4.1 CSL API Reference Introduction

Not all CSL API modules are supported on all devices. For example, the EDMA API module is not supported on the '6201 because the '6201 does not have EDMA hardware. When an API module is not supported, all of its header file information is conditionally compiled out, meaning the declarations will not exist. Because of this, calling an EDMA API function on devices not supporting EDMA will result in a compiler and/or linker error.

Table 4–1 shows which devices each API module is supported on:

*Table 4–1. CSL API Module Support for TMS320C6000 Devices*

Module	'6201	'6202	'6203	'6204	'6205	'6211	'6701	'6711
CACHE	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
DAT	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
CHIP	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
DMA	X	X	X	X	X		X	
EDMA						X		X
EMIF	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
HPI	X					X	X	X
IRQ	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
MCBSP	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
PWR	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
TIMER	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

## 4.2 CACHE

### 4.2.1 **CACHE\_Clean** *Cleans a range of L2 cache*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void CACHE_Clean(     CACHE_REGION Region,     UINT32 Addr,     UINT32 WordCt );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	Region	Specifies which cache region to clean; must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CACHE_L2</li> <li>CACHE_L2ALL</li> </ul>
	Addr	Beginning address of range to clean; word aligned
	WordCt	Number of 4-byte words to clean
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	<p>Cleans a range of L2 cache. All lines within the range defined by <code>Addr</code> and <code>WordCt</code> are cleaned out of L2. If <code>CACHE_L2ALL</code> is specified, then all of L2 is cleaned, <code>Addr</code> and <code>WordCt</code> are ignored. A clean operation involves writing back all dirty cache lines then invalidation of those lines. This routine waits until the operation completes before returning.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<p>Note: This function does nothing on devices without L2 cache.</p>	
	<p>If you want to clean a 4K-byte range that starts at 0x80000000 out of L2 use:</p>	
	<pre>CACHE_Clean(CACHE_L2, 0x80000000, 0x00000400);</pre> <p>If you want to clean all lines out of L2 use:</p> <pre>CACHE_Clean(CACHE_L2All, 0x00000000, 0x00000000);</pre>	

#### 4.2.2 **CACHE\_EnableCaching** *Specifies block of ext. memory for caching*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void CACHE_EnableCaching(     UINT32 Block );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	Block	<p>Specifies a block of external memory to enable caching for; must one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CACHE_CE33 –(0xB3000000 to 0xB3FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE32 –(0xB2000000 to 0xB2FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE31 –(0xB1000000 to 0xB1FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE30 –(0xB0000000 to 0xB0FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE23 –(0xA3000000 to 0xA3FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE22 –(0xA2000000 to 0xA2FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE21 –(0xA1000000 to 0xA1FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE20 –(0xA0000000 to 0xA0FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE13 –(0x93000000 to 0x93FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE12 –(0x92000000 to 0x92FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE11 –(0x91000000 to 0x91FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE10 –(0x90000000 to 0x90FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE03 –(0x83000000 to 0x83FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE02 –(0x82000000 to 0x82FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE01 –(0x81000000 to 0x81FFFFFF)</li> <li>• CACHE_CE00 –(0x80000000 to 0x80FFFFFF)</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	<p>Enables caching for the specified block of memory. This is accomplished by setting the CE bit in the appropriate memory attribute register (MAR). By default, caching is disabled for all memory spaces.</p> <p>Note: This function does nothing on devices without L2 cache.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<p>To enable caching for the range of memory from 0x80000000 to 0x80FFFFFF use:</p> <pre>CACHE_EnableCaching(CACHE_CE00);</pre>	



#### 4.2.3 **CACHE\_Flush** *Flushes a region of cache*

Function	<pre>void CACHE_Flush(     CACHE_REGION Region,     UINT32 Addr,     UINT32 WordCt ) ;</pre>		
Arguments	Region	Specifies which cache region to flush from; must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• CACHE_L2</li><li>• CACHE_L2ALL</li><li>• CACHE_L1D</li></ul>	
	Addr	Starting address of memory range to flush	
	WordCt	Beginning address of range to flush; word aligned	
Return Value	none	Number of 4-byte words to flush	
Description	Flushes a range of L2 cache. All lines within the range defined by Addr and WordCt are flushed out of L2. If CACHE_L2ALL is specified, then all of L2 is flushed; Addr and WordCt are ignored. A flush operation involves writing back all dirty cache lines, but the lines are not invalidated. This routine waits until the operation completes before returning.		
Example	<p>Note: This function does nothing on devices without L2 cache.</p> <p>If you want to flush a 4K-byte range that starts at 0x80000000 out of L2, use:</p> <pre>CACHE_Flush(CACHE_L2, 0x80000000, 0x00000400) ;</pre> <p>If you want to flush all lines out of L2, use:</p> <pre>CACHE_Flush(CACHE_L2ALL, 0x00000000, 0x00000000) ;</pre>		

#### 4.2.4 **CACHE\_GetL2SramSize** *Returns current L2 size configured as SRAM*

<b>Function</b>	UINT32  CACHE_GetL2SramSize();		
<b>Arguments</b>	none		
<b>Return Value</b>	size	Returns number of bytes of on-chip SRAM	
<b>Description</b>	This function returns the current size of L2 that is configured as SRAM.		
	Note: This function does nothing on devices without L2 cache.		
<b>Example</b>	SramSize = CACHE_GetL2SramSize();		

#### 4.2.5 **CACHE\_Invalidate** *Invalidates a region of cache*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void CACHE_Invalidate(     CACHE_REGION Region,     UINT32 Addr,     UINT32 ByteCt ) ;</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	Region	Specifies which cache region to invalidate; must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>CACHE_L1P</code>      Invalidate L1P</li><li>• <code>CACHE_L1PALL</code>    Invalidate all of L1P</li><li>• <code>CACHE_L1DALL</code>    Invalidate all of L1D</li></ul>
	Addr	Beginning address of range to invalidate; word aligned
	ByteCt	Number of 4-byte words to invalidate
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Invalidates a range from cache. All lines within the range defined by Addr and WordCt are invalidated from Region. If <code>CACHE_L1PALL</code> is specified, then all of L1P is invalidated; Addr and WordCt are ignored. Likewise, if <code>CACHE_L1DALL</code> is specified, then all of L1D is invalidated; Addr and WordCt are ignored. This routine waits until the operation completes before returning.	
<b>Example</b>	Note: This function does nothing on devices without L2 cache.	
	If you want to invalidate a 4K-byte range that starts at 0x80000000 from L1P, use:	
	<pre>CACHE_Flush(CACHE_L1P, 0x80000000, 0x00000400) ;</pre>	
	If you want to invalidate all lines from L1D, use:	
	<pre>CACHE_Flush(CACHE_L1DALL, 0x00000000, 0x00000000) ;</pre>	

#### 4.2.6 **CACHE\_Reset** *Resets cache to power-on default*

<b>Function</b>	<code>void CACHE_Reset();</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	none
<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	<p>Resets cache to power-on default.</p> <p>Devices with L2 Cache:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PCC and DCC fields of CSR are set to zero (mapped)</li> <li>• All MAR bits are cleared</li> <li>• L2 mode set to all SRAM</li> </ul> <p>Devices without L2 Cache:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PCC field of CSR set to zero (mapped)</li> </ul>

Note: If you reset the cache, any dirty data will be lost. If you want to preserve this data, flush it out first.

**Example** `CACHE_Reset();`

#### 4.2.7 **CACHE\_SetL2Mode** *Sets L2 cache mode*

<b>Function</b>	<code>CACHE_L2MODE CACHE_SetL2Mode(              CACHE_L2MODE NewMode          );</code>	
<b>Arguments</b>	NewMode	<p>New L2 cache mode; must be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>CACHE_0KSRAM</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_16KSRAM</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_32KSRAM</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_48KSRAM</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_64KSRAM</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_0KCACHE</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_16KCACHE</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_32KCACHE</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_48KCACHE</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_64KCACHE</code></li> </ul>

<b>Return Value</b>	OldMode	Returns old cache mode; will be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>CACHE_0KSRAM</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_16KSRAM</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_32KSRAM</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_48KSRAM</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_64KSRAM</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_0KCACHE</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_16KCACHE</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_32KCACHE</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_48KCACHE</code></li> <li>• <code>CACHE_64KCACHE</code></li> </ul>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets the mode of the L2 cache. There are three conditions that may occur as a result of changing cache modes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. A decrease in cache size</li> <li>2. An increase in cache size</li> <li>3. No change in cache size</li> </ol> <p>If the cache size decreases, all of L2 is flushed; then the mode is changed. If the cache size increases, the part of SRAM that is about to be turned into cache is flushed out of L1; then the mode is changed. Nothing happens when there is no change.</p> <p>Increasing cache size means that some of the SRAM is lost. If you have data in SRAM that you do not want lost, you must preserve it yourself before changing cache modes.</p> <p>Some of the cache modes are identical. For example, on the '6211 there are 64K-bytes of L2; hence, <code>CACHE_16KSRAM</code> is equivalent to <code>CACHE_48KCACHE</code>. However, if the L2 size changes on a future device, this will not be the case.</p> <p>Note: This function does nothing on devices without L2 cache.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>CACHE_L2MODE OldMode;  OldMode = CACHE_SetL2Mode(CACHE_32KCACHE);</pre>	

#### 4.2.8 **CACHE\_SetPccMode** *Sets program cache mode*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>CACHE_PCC CACHE_SetPccMode(     CACHE_PCC NewMode );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	NewMode	<p>New program cache mode; must be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CACHE_PCCMAPPED</li> <li>• CACHE_PCCENABLE</li> <li>• CACHE_PCCFREEZE</li> <li>• CACHE_PCCBYPASS</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	OldMode	<p>Returns the old program cache mode; will be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CACHE_PCCMAPPED</li> <li>• CACHE_PCCENABLE</li> <li>• CACHE_PCCFREEZE</li> <li>• CACHE_PCCBYPASS</li> </ul>
<b>Description</b>	<p>This function sets the program cache mode for devices that don't have an L2 cache. For devices that do have an L2 cache such as the '6211, this function does nothing. See the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for the meaning of the cache modes.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<p>To enable the program cache in normal mode, use:</p> <pre>CACHE_PCC OldMode; OldMode = CACHE_SetPccMode(CACHE_PCCENABLE);</pre>	

#### 4.2.9 **CACHE\_SUPPORT** *A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the CACHE module*

<b>Constant</b>	CACHE_SUPPORT	
<b>Description</b>	<p>Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the CACHE module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.</p> <p>Currently, all devices support this module.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>#if (CACHE_SUPPORT)     /* user cache configuration */ #endif</pre>	

## 4.3 CSL

### 4.3.1 **CSL\_Init** *Calls the initialization function of all CSL API modules*

<b>Function</b>	<code>void CSL_Init();</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	none
<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	<p>The CSL module is the top-level API module whose primary purpose is to initialize the library. Only one function is exported:</p> <p>□ <code>CSL_Init()</code></p> <p>The <i>CSL_Init()</i> function must be called once at the beginning of your program before calling any other CSL API functions.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<code>CSL_Init();</code>

## 4.4 DAT

### 4.4.1 **DAT\_Close** *Closes the DAT module*

<b>Function</b>	<code>void DAT_Close();</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	none
<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	Closes the DAT module. First, any pending requests are allowed to complete; then if applicable, any DMA channels are closed.
<b>Example</b>	<code>DAT_Close();</code>

### 4.4.2 **DAT\_Copy** *Copies a linear block of data from Src to Dst using DMA or EDMA hardware*

<b>Function</b>	<pre> UINT32 DAT_Copy(     void *Src,     void *Dst,     UINT16 ByteCnt ); </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>Src</code>	Pointer to source data
	<code>Dst</code>	Pointer to destination location
	<code>ByteCnt</code>	Number of bytes to copy
<b>Return Value</b>	UINT32	Transfer ID
<b>Description</b>	<p>Copies a linear block of data from <code>Src</code> to <code>Dst</code> using DMA or EDMA hardware depending on the device. The arguments are checked for alignment and the DMA is submitted accordingly. For best performance, you should ensure that the source and destination addresses are aligned on a 4-byte boundary and the transfer length is a multiple of 4. A maximum of 65,535 bytes may be copied. A <code>ByteCnt</code> of zero has unpredictable results.</p> <p>If the DMA channel is busy with one or more previous requests, the function will block and wait for completion before submitting this request.</p> <p>The DAT module must be opened before calling this function. See <code>DAT_Open()</code>.</p> <p>The return value is a transfer identifier that may be used later on to wait for completion. See <code>DAT_Wait()</code>.</p>	

**Example**

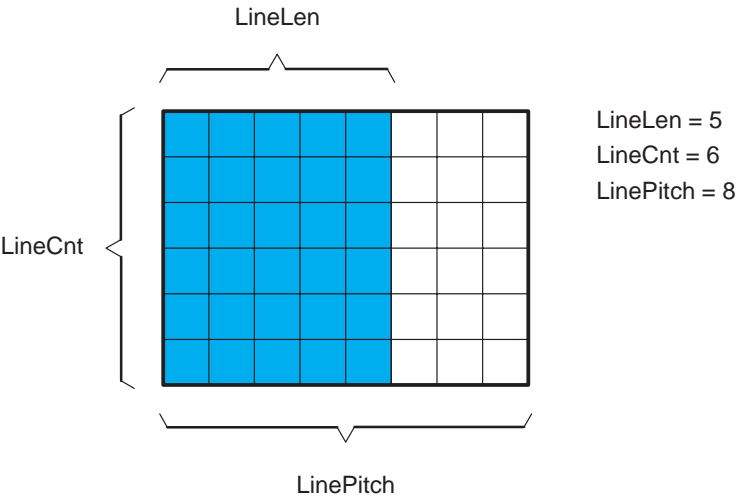
```
#define DATA_SIZE 256
UINT32 BuffA[DATA_SIZE/sizeof(UINT32)];
UINT32 BuffB[DATA_SIZE/sizeof(UINT32)];
...
DAT_Open(DAT_CHAANY,DAT_PRI_LOW,0);
DAT_Copy(BuffA,BuffB,DATA_SIZE);
...
```



#### 4.4.3 **DAT\_Copy2D** *Perform 2-dimensional data copy*

<b>Function</b>	<pre> UINT32 DAT_Copy2D(     UINT32 Type,     void *Src,     void *Dst,     UINT16 LineLen,     UINT16 LineCnt,     UINT16 LinePitch ); </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	<div> Type <div>Transfer type:</div> <div> <input type="checkbox"/> DAT_1D2D  <input type="checkbox"/> DAT_2D1D  <input type="checkbox"/> DAT_2D2D </div> </div> <div> Src <div>Pointer to source data</div> </div> <div> Dst <div>Pointer to destination location</div> </div> <div> LineLen <div>Number of bytes per line</div> </div> <div> LineCnt <div>Number of lines</div> </div> <div> LinePitch <div>Number of bytes between start of one line to start of next line</div> </div>	
<b>Return Value</b>	UINT32	Transfer ID
<b>Description</b>	<p>Performs a 2-dimensional data copy using DMA or EDMA hardware depending on the device. The arguments are checked for alignment and the hardware configured accordingly. For best performance, ensure that the source address and destination address are aligned on a 4-byte boundary and also ensure that the LineLen and LinePitch are multiples of 4-bytes.</p> <p>If the channel is busy with previous requests, this function will block (spin) and wait till it frees up before submitting this request.</p> <p>Note: The DAT module must be opened with the DAT_OPEN_2D flag before calling this function. See DAT_Open().</p> <p>There are 3 ways to submit a 2D transfer, 1D to 2D, 2D to 1D, and 2D to 2D. This is specified using the type argument. In all cases, the number of bytes copied is LineLen X LineCnt. The 1D part of the transfer is just a linear block of data. The 2D part is illustrated below:</p>	

Figure 4–1. 2D Transfer



If a 2D to 2D transfer is specified, both the source and destination have the same LineLen, LineCnt, and LinePitch.

The return value is a transfer identifier that may be used later on to wait for completion. See DAT\_Wait().

**Example**      `DAT_Copy2D (DAT_1D2D, buffA, buffB, 16, 8, 32);`

4.4.4

**DAT\_Fill**

*Fills a linear block of memory with the specified fill value using DMA hardware*

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 DAT_Fill( void *Dst, UINT16 ByteCnt, UINT32 *Value );	
	<b>Arguments</b>	
	Dst	Pointer to destination location
	ByteCnt	Number of bytes to fill
<b>Return Value</b>	Value	Pointer to fill value
	none	Transfer ID

**Description**

Fills a linear block of memory with the specified fill value using DMA hardware. The arguments are checked for alignment and the DMA is submitted accordingly. For best performance, you should ensure that the destination address is aligned on a 4-byte boundary and the transfer length is a multiple of 4. A maximum of 65,535 bytes may be filled.

The fill value is 8-bits in size but must be contained in a 32-bit word. This is due to the way the DMA hardware works. If the arguments are 32-bit aligned, then the DMA transfer element size is set to 32-bits to maximize performance. This means that the source of the transfer, the fill value, must be 32-bits in size. So, the 8-bit fill value must be repeated to fill the 32-bit value. For example, if you want to fill a region of memory with the value 0xA5, the fill value should contain 0xA5A5A5A5 before calling this function. If the arguments are 16-bit aligned, a 16-bit element size is used. Finally, if any of the arguments are 8-bit aligned, an 8-bit element size is used. It is a good idea to always fill in the entire 32-bit fill value, this eliminates any endian issues.

If the DMA channel is busy with a previous request, the function will block and wait for completion before submitting this request.

The DAT module must be opened before calling this function. See `DAT_Open()`.

The return value is a transfer identifier that may be used later on to wait for completion. See `DAT_Wait()`.

**Note:** You should be aware that if the fill value is in cache, the DMA always uses the external address and not the value that is in cache. It is up to you to ensure that the fill value is flushed before calling this function. Also, since the user specifies a pointer to the fill value, it is important not to write to it while the fill is in progress.

**Example**

```
UINT32 BUFF_SIZE 256;
UINT32 Buff[BUFF_SIZE/sizeof(UINT32)];
UINT32 FillValue = 0xA5A5A5A5;
...
DAT_Open(DAT_CHAANY,DAT_PRI_LOW,0);
DAT_Fill(Buff,BUFF_SIZE,&FillValue);
```

#### 4.4.5 **DAT\_Open**

*Opens the DAT module*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void DAT_Open(     int Chanum,     int Priority,     UINT32 Flags );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	Chanum	Specifies which DMA channel to allocate; must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DAT_CHAANY</li><li>• DAT_CHA0</li><li>• DAT_CHA1</li><li>• DAT_CHA2</li><li>• DAT_CHA3</li></ul>
	Priority	Specifies the priority of the DMA channel; must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DAT_PRI_LOW</li><li>• DAT_PRI_HIGH</li></ul>
	Flags	Miscellaneous open flags <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DAT_OPEN_2D</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	none	

**Description**

This function opens up the DAT module and must be called before calling any of the other DAT API functions. The `ChanNum` argument specifies which DMA channel to open for exclusive use by the DAT module. For devices with EDMA, the `ChanNum` argument is ignored because the quick DMA is used which doesn't have a channel associated with it. Currently, there are no flags defined and the argument should be set to zero.

For DMA Devices:

- `ChanNum` specifies which DMA channel to use
- `DAT_PRI_LOW` sets the DMA channel up for CPU priority
- `DAT_PRI_HIGH` sets the DMA channel up for DMA priority

For EDMA Devices:

- `ChanNum` is ignored
- `DAT_PRI_LOW` sets LOW priority
- `DAT_PRI_HIGH` sets HIGH priority

Once the DAT module is opened, any resources allocated, such as DMA channels, remain allocated. You can call `DAT_Close()` that frees these resources.

If 2D transfers are planned via `DAT_Copy2D`, the `DAT_OPEN_2D` flag must be specified. Specifying this flag for devices with the DMA peripheral will cause allocation of one global count reload register and one global index register. These global registers are freed when `DAT_Close()` is called.

**Example**

To open the DAT module using any available DMA channel, use:

```
DAT_Open(DAT_CHAANY, DAT_PRI_LOW, 0);
```

To open the DAT module using DMA channel 2 in high priority mode, use:

```
DAT_Open(DAT_CHA2, DAT_PRI_HIGH, 0);
```

To open the DAT module for 2D copies, use:

```
DAT_Open(DAT_CHAANY, DAT_PRI_HIGH, DAT_OPEN_2D);
```

#### 4.4.6 **DAT\_Support** *A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the DAT module*

---

<b>Constant</b>	DAT_SUPPORT
<b>Description</b>	Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the DAT module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.  Currently, all devices support this module.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>#if (DAT_SUPPORT) /* user DAT configuration */ #endif</pre>

#### 4.4.7 **DAT\_Wait** *Waits for a previous transfer to complete identification by the transfer ID*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void DAT_Wait(     UINT32 Id );</pre>
<b>Arguments</b>	Id            Transfer identifier, returned by one of the DAT copy or DAT fill routines.
<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	This function waits for a previous transfer to complete, identified by the transfer ID. If the transfer has already completed, this function returns immediately. Interrupts are disabled during the wait.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 TransferId; ... DAT_Open(DAT_CHAANY, DAT_PRI_LOW, 0); ... TransferId = DAT_Copy(src, dst, len); /* user DAT configuration */ DAT_Wait(TransferId);</pre>

## 4.5 CHIP

### 4.5.1 **CHIP\_6XXX** *Current chip identification symbols*

<b>Constant</b>	CHIP_6201
	CHIP_6202
	CHIP_6203
	CHIP_6204
	CHIP_6205
	CHIP_6211
	CHIP_6211X
	CHIP_6701
	CHIP_6711

**Description** These are the current chip identification symbols. They are used throughout the CSL code to make compile-time decisions. When using the CSL, it is up to the user to define one and only one of these symbols. This is necessary because one common set of CSL header files is used for all versions of the library. These header files might define things differently, depending on the device. So, before including any CSL header files, you must define which device is being used. This can be done at the compiler command line by using the `-d` option, or if using *Code Composer Studio*, in the “*Project*→*Options*→*Compiler*→*Pre-processor*→*Define Symbols*” dialog.

You may also use these symbols to perform conditional compilation.

i.e.

```
#if (CHIP_6201)
    /* user CHIP configuration for 6201 */
#elif (CHIP_6211)
    /* user CHIP configuration for 6211 */
#endif
```

**Example** `cl6x -dCHIP_6201 mycode.c`

#### 4.5.2 **CHIP\_GetCpuId** *Returns the CPU ID field of the CSR register*

---

**Function**            `UINT32 CHIP_GetCpuId();`  
**Arguments**        `none`  
**Return Value**     `CPU ID`        Returns the CPU ID  
**Description**      This function returns the CPU ID field of the CSR register.  
**Example**           `UINT32 CpuId;`  
                      `CpuId = CHIP_GetCpuId();`

#### 4.5.3 **CHIP\_GetEndian** *Returns the current endian mode of the device*

---

**Function**           `int CHIP_GetEndian();`  
**Arguments**        `none`  
**Return Value**     `endian mode`       Returns the current endian mode of the device; will be one of the following:

- `CHIP_ENDIAN_BIG`
- `CHIP_ENDIAN_LITTLE`

  
**Description**      Returns the current endian mode of the device as determined by the EN bit of the CSR register.  
**Example**           `UINT32 Endian;`  
                      `...`  
                      `Endian = CHIP_GetEndian();`  
                      `if (Endian == CHIP_ENDIAN_BIG) {`  
                          `/* user big endian configuration /`  
                      `} else {`  
                          `/* user little endian configuration */`  
                      `}`



#### 4.5.4 **CHIP\_GetMapMode** *Returns the current map mode of the device*

<b>Function</b>	<code>int CHIP_GetMapMode();</code>		
<b>Arguments</b>	none		
<b>Return Value</b>	map mode	Returns current device MAP mode; will be one of the following:	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>CHIP_MAP_0</code></li><li>• <code>CHIP_MAP_1</code></li></ul>	
<b>Description</b>	Returns the current MAP mode of the device as determined by the MAP bit of the EMIF global control register.		
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 MapMode; ... MapMode = CHIP_GetMapMode(); if (MapMode == CHIP_MAP_0) {     /* user map 0 configuration / } else {     / user map 1 configuration */ }</pre>		

#### 4.5.5 **CHIP\_GetRevId** *Returns the CPU revision ID*

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 CHIP_GetRevId();		
<b>Arguments</b>	none		
<b>Return Value</b>	revision ID	Returns CPU revision ID	
<b>Description</b>	This function returns the CPU revision ID as determined by the <i>Revision ID</i> field of the CSR register.		
<b>Example</b>	UINT32 RevId; RevId = CHIP_GetRevId();		

#### 4.5.6 **CHIP\_SUPPORT** *A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the CHIP module*

<b>Constant</b>	<code>CHIP_SUPPORT</code>		
<b>Description</b>	<p>Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the CHIP module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.</p> <p>Currently, all devices support this module.</p>		
<b>Example</b>	<pre> #if (CHIP_SUPPORT)     /* user CHIP configuration */ #endif </pre>		

## 4.6 DMA

### 4.6.1 **DMA\_AllocGlobalReg** *Allocates a global DMA register*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>UINT32 DMA_AllocGlobalReg(     DMA_GBL RegType,     UINT32 InitVal );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	RegType	Global register type; must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DMA_GBL_ADDRRLD</li><li>• DMA_GBL_INDEX</li><li>• DMA_GBL_CNTRL</li><li>• DMA_GBL_SPLIT</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	InitVal	Value to initialize the register to
<b>Description</b>	Global Register ID	Unique ID number for the global register
<p>Since the DMA global registers are shared, they must be controlled using resource management. This is done using <code>DMA_AllocGlobalReg()</code> and <code>DMA_FreeGlobalReg()</code> functions. Allocating a register ensures that it will not be allocated again until it is freed. The register ID may then be used to get or set the register value by calling <code>DMA_GetGlobalReg()</code> and <code>DMA_SetGlobalReg()</code> respectively. If the register cannot be allocated, a register id of 0 is returned.</p> <p>The register ID may be directly used with the <code>DMA_MK_PRCTL</code> macro.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>DMA_GBL_ADDRRLD</b> Allocate global address register for use as DMA DST RELOAD or DMA SRC RELOAD. Will allocate one of the following DMA registers:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Global Address Register B</li><li>• Global Address Register C</li><li>• Global Address Register D</li></ul></li><li>• <b>DMA_GBL_INDEX</b> Allocate global index register for use as DMA INDEX. Will allocate one of the following DMA registers:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Global Index Register A</li><li>• Global Index Register B</li></ul></li></ul>		

- **DMA\_GBL\_CNTRLD**  
Allocate global count reload register for use as DMA CNT RELOAD. Will allocate one of the following DMA registers:
  - Global Count Reload Register A
  - Global Count Reload Register B
- **DMA\_GBL\_SPLIT**  
Allocate global address register for use as DMA SPLIT. Will allocate one of the following DMA registers:
  - Global Address Register A
  - Global Address Register B
  - Global Address Register C

**Example**

```

UINT32 RegId;
...
/* allocate global index register and initialize it
*/
RegId = DMA_AllocGlobalReg(DMA_GBL_
INDEX, 0x00200040);

```

#### 4.6.2 **DMA\_AutoStart** *Starts a DMA channel with autoinitialization*

<b>Function</b>	<code>void DMA_AutoStart( DMA_HANDLE hDma );</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>hDma</code> Handle to DMA channel, see <code>DMA_Open()</code>
<b>Return Value</b>	<code>none</code>
<b>Description</b>	Starts a DMA channel running with autoinitialization by setting the START bits in the primary control register accordingly. See also <code>DMA_Pause()</code> , <code>DMA_Stop()</code> , and <code>DMA_Start()</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<code>DMA_AutoStart(hDma);</code>

#### 4.6.3 **DMA\_CHA\_CNT** *Number of DMA channels for the current device*

<b>Constant</b>	<code>DMA_CHA_CNT</code>
<b>Description</b>	This constant holds the number of physical DMA channels for the current device.

#### 4.6.4 **DMA\_CLEAR\_CONDITION** *Clears one of the condition flags in the DMA secondary control register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre>DMA_CLEAR_CONDITION(     hDma ,     COND ) ;</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hDma	Handle to DMA channel, see DMA_Open ( )
	COND	Condition to clear, must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DMA_SECCTL_SXCOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_FRAMECOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_LASTCOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_BLOCKCOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_RDROPCOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_WDROPCOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_RSYNCSTAT</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_WSYNCSTAT</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	This macro clears one of the condition flags in the DMA secondary control register. See the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for a description of the condition flags.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>DMA_CLEAR_CONDITION(hDma , DMA_SECCTL_BLOCKCOND) ;</pre>	

#### 4.6.5 **DMA\_Close** *Closes a DMA channel opened via DMA\_Open ( )*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void DMA_Close(     DMA_HANDLE hDma ) ;</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hDma	Handle to DMA channel, see DMA_Open ( )
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	This function closes a DMA channel previously opened via DMA_Open ( ). The registers for the DMA channel are set to their power-on defaults and the completion interrupt is disabled and cleared.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>DMA_Close(hDma) ;</pre>	

#### 4.6.6 DMA\_CONFIG

*The DMA configuration structure used to set up a DMA channel*

<b>Structure</b>	DMA_CONFIG	
<b>Members</b>	UINT32 prctl	DMA primary control register value
	UINT32 secctl	DMA secondary control register value
	UINT32 src	DMA source address register value
	UINT32 dst	DMA destination address register value
	UINT32 xfrcnt	DMA transfer count register value
<b>Description</b>	This is the DMA configuration structure used to set up a DMA channel. You create and initialize this structure then pass its address to the DMA_ConfigA() function. You can use literal values or the <i>DMA_MK</i> macros to create the structure member values.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> DMA_CONFIG MyConfig = {     0x00000050, /* prctl */     0x00000080, /* secctl */     0x80000000, /* src   */     0x80010000, /* dst   */     0x00200040 /* xfrcnt */ }; ... DMA_ConfigA(hDma, &amp;MyConfig); </pre>	

#### 4.6.7 DMA\_ConfigA

*Sets up the DMA channel using the configuration structure*

<b>Function</b>	<pre> void DMA_ConfigA(     DMA_HANDLE hDma,     DMA_CONFIG *Config ); </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hDma	Handle to DMA channel. See DMA_Open()
	Config	Pointer to an initialized configuration structure
<b>Return Value</b>	None	
<b>Description</b>	Sets up the DMA channel using the configuration structure. The values of the structure are written to the DMA registers. The primary control register ( <i>prctl</i> ) is written last. See also DMA_ConfigB() and DMA_CONFIG.	

**Example**

```
DMA_CONFIG MyConfig = {
    0x00000050, /* prictl */
    0x00000080, /* secctl */
    0x80000000, /* src    */
    0x80010000, /* dst    */
    0x00200040 /* xfrcnt */
};
...
DMA_ConfigA(hDma, &MyConfig);
```

#### 4.6.8 **DMA\_ConfigB** *Sets up the DMA channel using the register values passed in*

**Function**

```
void DMA_ConfigB(
    DMA_HANDLE hDma,
    UINT32 prictl,
    UINT32 secctl,
    UINT32 src,
    UINT32 dst,
    UINT32 xfrcnt
);
```

**Arguments**

<code>hDma</code>	Handle to DMA channel. See <code>DMA_Open()</code>
<code>prictl</code>	Primary control register value
<code>secctl</code>	Secondary control register value
<code>src</code>	Source address register value
<code>dst</code>	Destination address register value
<code>xfrcnt</code>	Transfer count register value

**Return Value** none

**Description** Sets up the DMA channel using the register values passed in. The register values are written to the DMA registers. The primary control register (*prictl*) is written last. See also `DMA_ConfigA()`.

You may use literal values for the arguments or for readability. You may use the *DMA\_MK* macros to create the register values based on field values.

**Example**

```
DMA_ConfigB(hDma,
    0x00000050, /* prictl */
    0x00000080, /* secctl */
    0x80000000, /* src    */
    0x80010000, /* dst    */
    0x00200040 /* xfrcnt */
);
```

4.6.9	<b>DMA_FreeGlobalReg</b>	<i>Frees a global DMA register previously allocated by calling DMA_AllocGlobalReg()</i>
<b>Function</b>	<pre>void DMA_FreeGlobalReg(     UINT32 RegId );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	RegId	Global register ID obtained from DMA_AllocGlobalReg().
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	<p>This function frees a global DMA register that was previously allocated by calling DMA_AllocGlobalReg(). Once freed, the register is available for allocation again.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 RegId; ... /* allocate global index register and initialize it */ RegId = DMA_AllocGlobalReg(DMA_GBL_INDEX,0x00200040); ... / some time later on when you're done with it */ DMA_FreeGlobalReg(RegId);</pre>	

**4.6.10 DMA\_GET\_CONDITION**

*Gets one of the condition flags in the DMA secondary control register*

---

<b>Macro</b>	<pre>DMA_GET_CONDITION(     hDma ,     COND ) ;</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hDma	Handle to DMA channel. See DMA_Open ( )
	COND	Condition to get; must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DMA_SECCTL_SXCOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_FRAMECOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_LASTCOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_BLOCKCOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_RDROPCOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_WDROPCOND</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_RSYNCSTAT</li><li>• DMA_SECCTL_WSYNCSTAT</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	Condition	Condition, 0 if clear, 1 if set
<b>Description</b>	This macro gets one of the condition flags in the DMA secondary control register. See the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for a description of the condition flags.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>if (DMA_GET_CONDITION(hDma,DMA_SECCTL_BLOCKCOND)) {     /* user DMA configuration */ }</pre>	

**4.6.11 DMA\_GetEventId**

*Returns the IRQ event ID for the DMA completion interrupt*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>UINT32 DMA_GetEventId(     DMA_HANDLE hDma ) ;</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hDma	Handle to DMA channel. See DMA_Open ( )
<b>Return Value</b>	Event ID	IRQ Event ID for DMA Channel
<b>Description</b>	Returns the IRQ Event ID for the DMA completion interrupt. Use this ID to manage the event using the IRQ module.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>EventId = DMA_GetEventId(hDma) ; IRQ_Enable(EventId) ;</pre>	



4.6.12 **DMA\_GetGlobalReg**

*Reads a global DMA register that was previously allocated by calling `DMA_AllocGlobalReg()`*

<b>Function</b>	<pre> UINT32 DMA_GetGlobalReg(     UINT32 RegId ); </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	RegId	Global register ID obtained from <code>DMA_AllocGlobalReg()</code> .
<b>Return Value</b>	Register Value	Value read from register
<b>Description</b>	<p>This function returns the register value of the global DMA register that was previously allocated by calling <code>DMA_AllocGlobalReg()</code>.</p> <p>If you prefer not to use the alloc/free paradigm for the global register management, the predefined register IDs may be used. You should be aware that use of predefined register IDs precludes the use of alloc/free. The list of predefined IDs are shown below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>DMA_GBL_ADDRRLDB</code></li> <li>• <code>DMA_GBL_ADDRRLDC</code></li> <li>• <code>DMA_GBL_ADDRRLDD</code></li> <li>• <code>DMA_GBL_INDEXA</code></li> <li>• <code>DMA_GBL_INDEXB</code></li> <li>• <code>DMA_GBL_CNTRLDA</code></li> <li>• <code>DMA_GBL_CNTRLDB</code></li> <li>• <code>DMA_GBL_SPLITA</code></li> <li>• <code>DMA_GBL_SPLITB</code></li> <li>• <code>DMA_GBL_SPLITC</code></li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> <code>DMA_GBL_ADDRRLDB</code> denotes the same physical register as <code>DMA_GBL_SPLITB</code> and <code>DMA_GBL_ADDRRLDC</code> denotes the same physical register as <code>DMA_GBL_SPLITC</code>.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 RegId; UINT32 RegValue; ... /* allocate global index register and initialize it / RegId = DMA_AllocGlobalReg(DMA_GBL_ INDEX, 0x00200040); ... RegValue = DMA_GetGlobalReg(RegId); </pre>	

#### 4.6.13 **DMA\_GetStatus** *Reads the status bits of the DMA channel*

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 DMA_GetStatus( DMA_HANDLE hDma ) ;	
<b>Arguments</b>	hDma	Handle to DMA channel, see DMA_Open ( )
<b>Return Value</b>	Status Value	Current DMA channel status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DMA_STATUS_STOPPED</li><li>• DMA_STATUS_RUNNING</li><li>• DMA_STATUS_PAUSED</li><li>• DMA_STATUS_AUTORUNNING</li></ul>
<b>Description</b>	This function reads the STATUS bits of the DMA channel	
<b>Example</b>	while (DMA_Status(hDma)==DMA_STATUS_RUNNING) ;	

#### 4.6.14 **DMA\_MK\_AUXCTL** *Makes a value suitable for the auxiliary control register*

<b>Macro</b>	DMA_MK_AUXCTL( chpri, auxpri )	
<b>Arguments</b>	chpri	DMA channel priority: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DMA_AUXCTL_CHPRI_HIGHEST</li><li>• DMA_AUXCTL_CHPRI_2ND</li><li>• DMA_AUXCTL_CHPRI_3RD</li><li>• DMA_AUXCTL_CHPRI_4TH</li><li>• DMA_AUXCTL_CHPRI_LOWEST</li></ul>
	auxpri	Auxiliary channel priority mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DMA_AUXCTL_AUXPRI_CPU</li><li>• DMA_AUXCTL_AUXPRI_DMA</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	AUXCTL Value	Constructed register value

**Description** Use this macro to make a value suitable for the auxiliary control register.

The power-on default value is `DMA_AUXCTL_DEFAULT`.

Use of the *DMA\_MK* macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.

Refer to the *TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide* (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.

**Example**

```
UINT32 AuxCtl;  
  
AuxCtl = DMA_MK_AUXCTL(0,1);  
  
AuxCtl = DMA_MK_AUXCTL(  
    DMA_AUXCTL_CHPRI_HIGHEST,  
    DMA_AUXCTL_AUXPRI_DMA  
);
```

**4.6.15 DMA\_MK\_DST**

*Makes a value suitable for the destination address register*

<b>Macro</b>	DMA_MK_DST( dst )	
<b>Arguments</b>	dst	Destination address: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DMA_DST_DST_OF(x)</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	DST Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the destination address register. Although not really necessary, this macro is included for orthogonality and code readability.</p> <p>The power-on default value is DMA_DST_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>DMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 Dst;  Dst = DMA_MK_DST(0x80000000);  Dst = DMA_MK_DST(     DMA_DST_DST_OF(0x80000000) );</pre>	

4.6.16

DMA\_MK\_GBLADDR

Makes a value suitable for a global address register

Macro	<pre>DMA_MK_GBLADDR(     gbladdr )</pre>		
Arguments	<pre>gbladdr</pre>	Global address value:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>DMA_GBLADDR_GBLADDR_OF(x)</code></li></ul>
Return Value	<pre>GBLADDR Value</pre>	Constructed register value	
Description	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for a global address register. Although not really necessary, this macro is included for orthogonality and code readability.</p> <p>Use of the <i>DMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>		
Example	<pre>UINT32 GblAddr;  GblAddr = DMA_MK_GBLADDR(0x80000000);  GblAddr = DMA_MK_GBLADDR(     DMA_GBLADDR_GBLADDR_OF(0x80000000) );</pre>		

#### 4.6.17 **DMA\_MK\_GBLCNT** *Makes a value suitable for a global count reload register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre>DMA_MK_GBLCNT(     elecnt,     frmcnt )</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	elecnt	Element count: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DMA_GBLCNT_ELECNT_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	frmcnt	Frame count: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DMA_GBLCNT_FRMCNT_OF(x)</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	GBLCNT Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for a global count reload register.</p> <p>Use of the <i>DMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 GblCnt;  GblCnt = DMA_MK_GBLCNT(0x0100,0x0020);  GblCnt = DMA_MK_GBLCNT(     DMA_GBLCNT_ELECNT_OF(0x0100),     DMA_GBLCNT_FRMCNT_OF(0x0020) );</pre>	

4.6.18

DMA\_MK\_GBLIDX

Makes a value suitable for a global index register

Macro	DMA_MK_GBLIDX( eleidx, frmidx ) 	
Arguments	eleidx	Element index: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DMA_GBLCNT_ELEIDX_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	frmidx	Frame index: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DMA_GBLCNT_FRMIDX_OF(x)</li> </ul>
Return Value	GBLIDX Value	Constructed register value
Description	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for a global index register.</p> <p>Use of the <i>DMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
Example	<pre> UINT32 GblIdx;  GblIdx = DMA_MK_GBLIDX(0x0100,0x0020);  GblIdx = DMA_MK_GBLIDX(     DMA_GBLCNT_ELEIDX_OF(0x0100),     DMA_GBLCNT_FRMIDX_OF(0x0020) ); </pre>	

**4.6.19 DMA\_MK\_PRCTL***Makes a value suitable for a primary control register***Macro**

```

DMA_MK_PRCTL(
    start,
    srcdir,
    dstdir,
    esize,
    split,
    cntrld,
    index,
    rsync,
    wsync,
    pri,
    tcint,
    fs,
    emod,
    srcrld,
    dstrld
)

```

**Arguments**

start

**Start bits:**

- DMA\_PRCTL\_START\_STOP
- DMA\_PRCTL\_START\_NORMAL
- DMA\_PRCTL\_START\_PAUSE
- DMA\_PRCTL\_START\_AUTOINIT

srcdir

**Source modification:**

- DMA\_PRCTL\_SRC\_DIR\_NONE
- DMA\_PRCTL\_SRC\_DIR\_INC
- DMA\_PRCTL\_SRC\_DIR\_DEC
- DMA\_PRCTL\_SRC\_DIR\_IDX

dstdir

**Destination modification:**

- DMA\_PRCTL\_DST\_DIR\_NONE
- DMA\_PRCTL\_DST\_DIR\_INC
- DMA\_PRCTL\_DST\_DIR\_DEC
- DMA\_PRCTL\_DST\_DIR\_IDX

esize

**Element size:**

- DMA\_PRCTL\_ESIZE\_32BIT
- DMA\_PRCTL\_ESIZE\_16BIT
- DMA\_PRCTL\_ESIZE\_8BIT



split

Split channel mode:

- DMA\_PRCTL\_SPLIT\_DISABLE
- DMA\_PRCTL\_SPLIT\_A
- DMA\_PRCTL\_SPLIT\_B
- DMA\_PRCTL\_SPLIT\_C
- DMA\_GBL\_SPLIT register ID. See DMA\_AllocGlobalReg().

cntrld

Count reload:

- DMA\_PRCTL\_CNTRLD\_NA
- DMA\_PRCTL\_CNTRLD\_A
- DMA\_PRCTL\_CNTRLD\_B
- DMA\_GBL\_CNTRLD register ID. See DMA\_AllocGlobalReg().

index

Index:

- DMA\_PRCTL\_INDEX\_NA
- DMA\_PRCTL\_INDEX\_A
- DMA\_PRCTL\_INDEX\_B
- DMA\_GBL\_INDEX register ID. See DMA\_AllocGlobalReg().

rsync

Read synchronization:

- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_NONE
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_TINT0
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_TINT1
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_SDINT
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_EXTINT4
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_EXTINT5
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_EXTINT6
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_EXTINT7
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_DMAINT0
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_DMAINT1
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_DMAINT2
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_DMAINT3
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_XEVT0
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_REVT0
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_XEVT1
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_REVT1
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_DSPINT
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_XEVT2
- DMA\_PRCTL\_RSYNC\_REVT2

wsync

Write synchronization:

- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_NONE
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_TINT0
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_TINT1
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_SDINT
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_EXTINT4
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_EXTINT5
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_EXTINT6
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_EXTINT7
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_DMAINT0
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_DMAINT1
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_DMAINT2
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_DMAINT3
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_XEVT0
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_REVT0
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_XEVT1
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_REVT1
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_DSPINT
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_XEVT2
- DMA\_PRCTL\_WSYNC\_REVT2

pri

Priority:

- DMA\_PRCTL\_PRI\_CPU
- DMA\_PRCTL\_PRI\_DMA

tcint

Transfer complete interrupt:

- DMA\_PRCTL\_TCINT\_DISABLE
- DMA\_PRCTL\_TCINT\_ENABLE

fs

Frame sync:

- DMA\_PRCTL\_FS\_DISABLE
- DMA\_PRCTL\_FS\_RSYNC

emod

Emulation mode:

- DMA\_PRCTL\_EMOD\_NOHALT
- DMA\_PRCTL\_EMOD\_HALT

	srcrld	Source reload: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_PRCTL_SRCRLD_NONE</li><li>DMA_PRCTL_SRCRLD_B</li><li>DMA_PRCTL_SRCRLD_C</li><li>DMA_PRCTL_SRCRLD_D</li><li>DMA_GBL_ADDRRLD register ID. See DMA_AllocGlobalReg( ).</li></ul>
	dstrld	Destination reload: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_PRCTL_DSTRLD_NONE</li><li>DMA_PRCTL_DSTRLD_B</li><li>DMA_PRCTL_DSTRLD_C</li><li>DMA_PRCTL_DSTRLD_D</li><li>DMA_GBL_ADDRRLD register ID. See DMA_AllocGlobalReg( ).</li></ul>
Return Value	PRCTL Value	Constructed register value
Description	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for a primary control register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is DMA_PRCTL_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>DMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	

**Example**

```

UINT32 PriCtl;

/* you can do this /
PriCtl =
DMA_MK_PRCTL(0,1,1,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0);

/ or to be more readable, you can do this */
PriCtl = DMA_MK_PRCTL(
    DMA_PRCTL_START_STOP,
    DMA_PRCTL_SRC_DIR_INC,
    DMA_PRCTL_DST_DIR_INC,
    DMA_PRCTL_ESIZE_32BIT,
    DMA_PRCTL_SPLIT_DISABLE,
    DMA_PRCTL_CNTRLD_NA,
    DMA_PRCTL_INDEX_NA,
    DMA_PRCTL_RSYNC_NONE,
    DMA_PRCTL_WSYNC_NONE,
    DMA_PRCTL_PRI_CPU,
    DMA_PRCTL_TCINT_DISABLE,
    DMA_PRCTL_FS_DISABLE,
    DMA_PRCTL_EMOD_NOHALT,
    DMA_PRCTL_SRCRLD_NONE,
    DMA_PRCTL_DSTRLD_NONE
);

```

**4.6.20 DMA\_MK\_SECCTL***Makes a value suitable for a secondary control register***Macro**

```

DMA_MK_SECCTL(
    sxie,
    frameie,
    lastie,
    blockie,
    rdropie,
    wdropie,
    dmacen,
    fsig,
    rspol,
    wspol
)

```

**Arguments**

sxie

Split transmit overrun receive interrupt enable:

- DMA\_SECCTL\_SXIE\_DISABLE
- DMA\_SECCTL\_SXIE\_ENABLE

frameie	Frame complete interrupt enable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_SECCTL_FRAMEIE_DISABLE</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_FRAMEIE_ENABLE</li></ul>
lastie	Last frame interrupt enable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_SECCTL_LASTIE_DISABLE</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_LASTIE_ENABLE</li></ul>
blockie	Block transfer complete interrupt enable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_SECCTL_BLOCKIE_DISABLE</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_BLOCKIE_ENABLE</li></ul>
rdropie	Dropped read sync interrupt enable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_SECCTL_RDROPIE_DISABLE</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_RDROPIE_ENABLE</li></ul>
wdropie	Dropped write sync interrupt enable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_SECCTL_WDROPIE_DISABLE</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_WDROPIE_ENABLE</li></ul>
dmacen	DMAC pin control: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_SECCTL_DMACEN_LOW</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_DMACEN_HIGH</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_DMACEN_RSYNCSTAT</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_DMACEN_WSYNCSTAT</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_DMACEN_FRAMECOND</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_DMACEN_BLOCKCOND</li></ul>
fsig	Frame sync ignore: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_SECCTL_FSIG_NA</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_FSIG_NORMAL</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_FSIG_IGNORE</li></ul>
rspol	Read sync polarity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_SECCTL_RSPOL_NA</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_RSPOL_ACTIVEHIGH</li><li>DMA_SECCTL_RSPOL_ACTIVELOW</li></ul>

	wspol	Write sync polarity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DMA_SECCTL_WSPOL_NA</li> <li>DMA_SECCTL_WSPOL_ACTIVEHIGH</li> <li>DMA_SECCTL_WSPOL_ACTIVELOW</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	SECCTL Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for a secondary control register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is DMA_SECCTL_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>DMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 SecCtl;  /* you can do this / SecCtl = DMA_MK_SECCTL(0,0,0,1,0,0,0,0,0,0);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ SecCtl = DMA_MK_SECCTL(     DMA_SECCTL_SXIE_DISABLE,     DMA_SECCTL_FRAMEIE_DISABLE,     DMA_SECCTL_LASTIE_DISABLE,     DMA_SECCTL_BLOCKIE_ENABLE,     DMA_SECCTL_RDROPIE_DISABLE,     DMA_SECCTL_WDROPIE_DISABLE,     DMA_SECCTL_DMACEN_LOW,     DMA_SECCTL_FSIG_NORMAL,     DMA_SECCTL_RSPOL_ACTIVEHIGH,     DMA_SECCTL_WSPOL_ACTIVEHIGH ); </pre>	

#### 4.6.21 **DMA\_MK\_SRC** *Makes a value suitable for the source address register*

<b>Macro</b>	<code>DMA_MK_SRC(     src )</code>	
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>src</code>	Source address: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>DMA_SRC_SRC_OF(x)</code></li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	SRC Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the source address register. Although not really necessary, this macro is included for orthogonality and code readability.</p> <p>The power-on default value is <code>DMA_SRC_DEFAULT</code>.</p> <p>Use of the <i>DMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 Src;  Src = DMA_MK_SRC(0x80000000);  Src = DMA_MK_SRC(     DMA_SRC_SRC_OF(0x80000000) );</pre>	



4.6.22

**DMA\_MK\_XFRCNT**

Makes a value suitable for a transfer count register

Macro	<pre>DMA_MK_XFRCNT(     elecnt,     frmcnt )</pre>	
Arguments	elecnt	Element count: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_XFRCNT_ELECNT_OF(x)</li></ul>
	frmcnt	Frame count: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DMA_GBLCNT_FRMCNT_OF(x)</li></ul>
Return Value	XFRCNT Value	Constructed register value
Description	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for a transfer count register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is DMA_XFRCNT_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>DMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
Example	<pre>UINT32 XfrCnt;  XfrCnt = DMA_MK_XFRCNT(0x0100,0x0020);  XfrCnt = DMA_MK_XFRCNT(     DMA_XFRCNT_ELECNT_OF(0x0100),     DMA_XFRCNT_FRMCNT_OF(0x0020) );</pre>	

#### 4.6.23 **DMA\_Open** *Opens a DMA channel for use*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>DMA_HANDLE DMA_Open(     int Chanum,     UINT32 Flags );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	Chanum	DMA channel to open: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DMA_CHAANY</li><li>• DMA_CHA0</li><li>• DMA_CHA1</li><li>• DMA_CHA2</li><li>• DMA_CHA3</li></ul>
	Flags	Open flags (logical OR of any of the following): <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• DMA_OPEN_RESET</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	Device Handle	Handle to newly opened device
<b>Description</b>	<p>Before a DMA channel can be used, it must first be opened by this function. Once opened, it cannot be opened again until closed. See <code>DMA_Close()</code>. You have the option of either specifying exactly which physical channel to open or you can let the library pick an unused one for you by specifying <code>DMA_CHAANY</code>. The return value is a unique device handle that you use in subsequent DMA API calls. If the open fails, <code>INV</code> is returned.</p> <p>If the <code>DMA_OPEN_RESET</code> is specified, the DMA channel registers are set to their power-on defaults and the channel interrupt is disabled and cleared.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>DMA_HANDLE hDma; ... hDma = DMA_Open(DMA_CHAANY, DMA_OPEN_RESET);</pre>	

**4.6.24 DMA\_Pause**

*Pauses the DMA channel by setting the START bits in the primary control register accordingly*

<b>Function</b>	void DMA_Pause( DMA_HANDLE hDma ) ;
<b>Arguments</b>	hDma      Handle to DMA channel. See DMA_Open( )
<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	This function pauses the DMA channel by setting the START bits in the primary control register accordingly. See also DMA_Start( ) , DMA_Stop( ) , and DMA_AutoStart( ) .
<b>Example</b>	DMA_Pause(hDma) ;

**4.6.25 DMA\_Reset**

*Resets the DMA channel by setting its registers to power-on defaults*

<b>Function</b>	void DMA_Reset( DMA_HANDLE hDma ) ;
<b>Arguments</b>	hDma      Handle to DMA channel. See DMA_Open( )
<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	Resets the DMA channel by setting its registers to power-on defaults and disabling and clearing the channel interrupt. You may use INV as the device handle to reset all channels.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>/* reset an open DMA channel / DMA_Reset(hDma) ;  / reset all DMA channels */ DMA_Reset(INV) ;</pre>

#### 4.6.26 **DMA\_SetAuxCtl** *Sets the DMA AUXCTL register*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void DMA_SetAuxCtl(     UINT32 AuxCtl );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	AuxCtl	Value to set AUXCTL register to
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	This function sets the DMA AUXCTL register. You may use the DMA_MK_AUXCTL macro to construct the register value based on field values. The default value for this register is DMA_AUXCTL_DEFAULT.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>DMA_SetAuxCtl(0x00000000);</pre>	

#### 4.6.27 **DMA\_SetGlobalReg** *Sets value of a global DMA register previously allocated by calling DMA\_AllocGlobalReg()*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void DMA_SetGlobalReg(     UINT32 RegId,     UINT32 Val );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	RegId	Global register ID obtained from DMA_AllocGlobalReg().
	Val	Value to set register to
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	This function sets the value of a global DMA register that was previously allocated by calling DMA_AllocGlobalReg().	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 RegId; ... /* allocate global index register and initialize it / RegId = DMA_AllocGlobalReg(DMA_GBL_INDEX, 0x00200040); ... DMA_SetGlobalReg(RegId, 0x12345678);</pre>	

#### 4.6.28 **DMA\_Start** *Starts a DMA channel running without autoinitialization*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void DMA_Start(     DMA_HANDLE hDma );</pre>		
<b>Arguments</b>	hDma	Handle to DMA channel, see <code>DMA_Open()</code>	
<b>Return Value</b>	none		
<b>Description</b>	Starts a DMA channel running without autoinitialization by setting the START bits in the primary control register accordingly. See also <code>DMA_Pause()</code> , <code>DMA_Stop()</code> , and <code>DMA_AutoStart()</code> .		
<b>Example</b>	<pre>DMA_Start(hDma);</pre>		

#### 4.6.29 **DMA\_Stop** *Stops a DMA channel by setting the START bits in the primary control register accordingly*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void DMA_Stop(     DMA_HANDLE hDma );</pre>
<b>Arguments</b>	hDma     Handle to DMA channel. See DMA_Open ( )
<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	Stops a DMA channel by setting the START bits in the primary control register accordingly. See also DMA_Pause ( ) , DMA_Start ( ) , and DMA_AutoStart ( ) .
<b>Example</b>	<pre>DMA_Stop(hDma);</pre>

#### 4.6.30 **DMA\_SUPPORT** *A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the DMA module*

<b>Constant</b>	DMA_SUPPORT		
<b>Description</b>	<p>Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the DMA module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.</p> <p>Note: The DMA module is not supported on devices that do not have the DMA peripheral. In these cases, the EDMA module is supported instead.</p>		
<b>Example</b>	<pre>#if (DMA_SUPPORT)     /* user DMA configuration / #elif (EDMA_SUPPORT)     /* user EDMA configuration */ #endif</pre>		

**4.6.31 DMA\_Wait**

*Enters a spin loop that polls the DMA status bits until the DMA completes*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void DMA_Wait(     DMA_HANDLE hDma ) ;</pre>
<b>Arguments</b>	<pre>hDma</pre> Handle to DMA channel. See <code>DMA_Open( )</code>
<b>Return Value</b>	<code>none</code>
<b>Description</b>	This function enters a spin loop that polls the DMA status bits until the DMA completes. Interrupts are not disabled during this loop. This function is equivalent to the following line of code:  <pre>while (DMA_Status(hDma)&amp;DMA_STATUS_RUNNING) ;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>DMA_Wait(hDma) ;</pre>

## 4.7 EDMA

### 4.7.1 **EDMA\_AllocTable** *Allocates a parameter RAM table from PRAM*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>EDMA_HANDLE EDMA_AllocTable(     int TableNum );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	TableNum	Table number to allocate. Valid values are 0 to DMA_TABLE_CNT-1; -1 for any.
<b>Return Value</b>	Device Handle	Returns a device handle
<b>Description</b>	<p>This function allocates a parameter RAM table from PRAM. You use PRAM tables for linking transfers together. You can either specify a table number or specify -1 and the function will pick an unused one for you. The return value is a device handle and may be used for APIs that require a device handle. If the table could not be allocated, then EDMA_HINV is returned.</p> <p>If you finish with the table and wish to free it up again, call EDMA_FreeTable().</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>EDMA_HANDLE hEdmaTable; ... hEdmaTable = EDMA_AllocTable(-1);</pre>	

### 4.7.2 **EDMA\_CHA\_CNT** *Number of EDMA channels*

<b>Constant</b>	EDMA_CHA_CNT
<b>Description</b>	Compile time constant that holds the number of EDMA channels.

#### 4.7.3 **EDMA\_ClearChannel** *Clears the EDMA event flag in the EDMA channel event register*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void EDMA_ClearChannel(     EDMA_HANDLE hEdma ) ;</pre>
<b>Arguments</b>	hEdma      Device handle, see EDMA_Open( ).
<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	<p>This function clears the EDMA event flag in the EDMA channel event register by writing to the appropriate bit in the EDMA event clear register (ECR).</p> <p>This function accepts the following devices handles:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• From EDMA_Open( )</li></ul>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>EDMA_ClearChannel(hEdma) ;</pre>

#### 4.7.4 **EDMA\_Close** *Closes a previously opened EDMA channel*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void EDMA_Close(     EDMA_HANDLE hEdma ) ;</pre>
<b>Arguments</b>	hEdma      Device handle. See EDMA_Open( ).
<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	<p>Closes a previously opened EDMA channel.</p> <p>This function accepts the following devices handles:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• From EDMA_Open( )</li></ul>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>EDMA_Close(hEdma) ;</pre>



4.7.5

EDMA\_CONFIG

The EDMA configuration structure used to set up an EDMA channel

Structure	EDMA_CONFIG	
Members	UINT32 opt	Options
	UINT32 src	Source address
	UINT32 cnt	Transfer count
	UINT32 dst	Destination address
	UINT32 idx	Index
	UINT32 rld	Element count reload and link address
Description	This is the EDMA configuration structure used to set up an EDMA channel. You create and initialize this structure and then pass its address to the EDMA_ConfigA() function. You can use literal values or the EDMA_MK macros to create the structure member values.	
Example	<pre>EDMA_CONFIG MyConfig = {     0x41200000, /* opt */     0x80000000, /* src */     0x00000040, /* cnt */     0x80010000, /* dst */     0x00000004, /* idx */     0x00000000 /* rld */ }; ... EDMA_ConfigA(hEdma, &amp;MyConfig);</pre>	

#### 4.7.6 **EDMA\_ConfigA** *Sets up the EDMA channel using the configuration structure*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void EDMA_ConfigA(     EDMA_HANDLE hDma,     EDMA_CONFIG *Config );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hEdma	Device handle. See EDMA_Open() and EDMA_AllocTable().
	Config	Pointer to an initialized configuration structure
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets up the EDMA channel using the configuration structure. The values of the structure are written to the EDMA PRAM entries. The options value (<i>opt</i>) is written last. See also EDMA_ConfigB() and EDMA_CONFIG.</p>	

Note: The predefined device handle EDMA\_HQDMA may be used as the *hEdma* argument if you wish to configure the quick DMA registers. In this case, the *rlD* structure member is ignored. First, *src*, *cnt*, *dst*, and *idx* structure members are written to the QDMA SRC, CNT, DST, and IDX registers, respectively. Then the *opt* structure member is written to the pseudo-QDMA OPT register.

This function accepts the following devices handles:

- From EDMA\_Open()
- From EDMA\_AllocTable()
- Quick DMA predefined handle

<b>Example</b>	<pre>EDMA_CONFIG MyConfig = {     0x41200000, /* opt */     0x80000000, /* src */     0x00000040, /* cnt */     0x80010000, /* dst */     0x00000004, /* idx */     0x00000000, /* rld */ }; ... EDMA_ConfigA(hEdma, &amp;MyConfig);</pre>
----------------	--

4.7.7 **EDMA\_ConfigB**

*Sets up the EDMA channel using the EDMA parameter arguments*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void EDMA_ConfigB(     EDMA_HANDLE hEdma,     UINT32 opt,     UINT32 src,     UINT32 cnt,     UINT32 dst,     UINT32 idx,     UINT32 rld );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hEdma	Device handle. See <code>EDMA_Open()</code> and <code>EDMA_AllocTable()</code> .
	opt	Options
	src	Source address
	cnt	Transfer count
	dst	Destination address
	idx	Index
	rld	Element count reload and link address
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets up the EDMA channel using the EDMA parameter arguments. The values of the arguments are written to the EDMA PRAM entries. The options value (<i>opt</i>) is written last. See also <code>EDMA_ConfigA()</code>.</p> <p>Note: The predefined device handle <code>EDMA_HQDMA</code> may be used as the <i>hEdma</i> argument if you wish to configure the quick DMA registers. In this case, the <i>rld</i> argument is ignored. First, <i>src</i>, <i>cnt</i>, <i>dst</i>, and <i>idx</i> are written to the QDMA SRC, CNT, DST, and IDX registers respectively. Then <i>opt</i> is written to the pseudo-QDMA OPT register.</p> <p>This function accepts the following devices handles:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From <code>EDMA_Open()</code></li> <li>• From <code>EDMA_AllocTable()</code></li> <li>• Quick DMA predefined handle</li> </ul>	

**Example**

```
EDMA_ConfigB(hEdma,
    0x41200000, /* opt */
    0x80000000, /* src */
    0x00000040, /* cnt */
    0x80010000, /* dst */
    0x00000004 /* idx */
    0x00000000 /* rld */
);
```

#### 4.7.8 **EDMA\_DisableChannel** *Disables an EDMA channel*

---

**Function** `void EDMA_DisableChannel(  
 EDMA_HANDLE hEdma  
);`

**Arguments** `hEdma` Device handle, see `EDMA_Open()`.

**Return Value** none

**Description** Disables an EDMA channel by clearing the corresponding bit in the EDMA event enable register. See also `EDMA_EnableChannel()`.  
This function accepts the following devices handles:

- From `EDMA_Open()`

**Example** `EDMA_DisableChannel(hEdma);`

#### 4.7.9 **EDMA\_EnableChannel** *Enables an EDMA channel*

---

**Function** `void EDMA_EnableChannel(  
 EDMA_HANDLE hEdma  
);`

**Arguments** `hEdma` Device handle, see `EDMA_Open()`.

**Return Value** none

**Description** Enables an EDMA channel by setting the corresponding bit in the EDMA event enable register. See also `EDMA_DisableChannel()`.  
When you open an EDMA channel it is disabled so you must enabled it explicitly.  
This function accepts the following devices handles:

- From `EDMA_Open()`

**Example** `EDMA_EnableChannel(hEdma);`

#### 4.7.10 **EDMA\_FreeTable** *Frees up a PRAM table previously allocated*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void EDMA_FreeTable(     EDMA_HANDLE hEdma );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hEdma	Device handle. See EDMA_AllocTable().
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	<p>This function frees up a PRAM table previously allocated via EDMA_AllocTable().</p> <p>This function accepts the following device handles:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From EDMA_AllocTable()</li> </ul>	
<b>Example</b>	EDMA_FreeTable(hEdmaTable);	

#### 4.7.11 **EDMA\_GetChannel** *Returns the current state of the channel event*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>UINT32 EDMA_GetChannel(     EDMA_HANDLE hEdma );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hEdma	Device handle. See EDMA_Open().
<b>Return Value</b>	Channel Flag	<p>Channel event flag:</p> <p>0 – event not detected</p> <p>1 – event detected</p>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Returns the current state of the channel event by reading the event flag from the EDMA channel event register (EER).</p> <p>This function accepts the following devices handles:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From EDMA_Open()</li> </ul>	
<b>Example</b>	flag = EDMA_GetChannel(hEdma);	

#### 4.7.12 **EDMA\_GetPriQStatus** *Returns the value of the priority queue status register (PQSR)*

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 EDMA_GetPriQStatus();
<b>Arguments</b>	none
<b>Return Value</b>	Status Returns status of the priority queue
<b>Description</b>	Returns the value of the priority queue status register (PQSR). May be the logical OR of any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x00000001 – PQ0</li> <li>• 0x00000002 – PQ1</li> <li>• 0x00000004 – PQ2</li> </ul>
<b>Example</b>	PqStat = EDMA_GetPriQStatus();

#### 4.7.13 **EDMA\_GetScratchAddr** *Returns the starting address of the EDMA PRAM used as non-cacheable on-chip SRAM (scratch area)*

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 EDMA_GetScratchAddr();
<b>Arguments</b>	none
<b>Return Value</b>	Scratch Address 32-bit starting address of PRAM scratch area
<b>Description</b>	There is a small portion of the EDMA PRAM that is not used for parameter tables and is free for use as non-cacheable on-chip SRAM. This function returns the starting address of this scratch area. See also EDMA_GetScratchSize().
<b>Example</b>	UINT32 *ScratchWord; ScratchWord = (UINT32*)EDMA_GetScratchAddr();

#### 4.7.14 **EDMA\_GetScratchSize** *Returns the size (in bytes) of the EDMA PRAM used as non-cacheable on-chip SRAM (scratch area)*

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 EDMA_GetScratchSize();
<b>Arguments</b>	none
<b>Return Value</b>	Scratch Size Size of PRAM scratch area in bytes
<b>Description</b>	There is a small portion of the EDMA PRAM that is not used for parameter tables and is free for use as non-cacheable on-chip SRAM. This function returns the size of this scratch area in bytes. See also EDMA_GetScratchAddr().
<b>Example</b>	ScratchSize = EDMA_GetScratchSize();

#### 4.7.15 **EDMA\_GetTableAddress** *Returns the 32-bit absolute address of the table*

<b>Function</b>	<pre> UINT32 GetTableAddress(     EDMA_HANDLE hEdma ); </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hEdma	Device handle obtained by <code>EDMA_AllocTable()</code> .
<b>Return Value</b>	Table Address	32-bit address of table
<b>Description</b>	<p>Given a device handle obtained from <code>EDMA_AllocTable()</code>, this function returns the 32-bit absolute address of the table.</p> <p>This function accepts the following device handles:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From <code>EDMA_AllocTable()</code></li> </ul>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>Addr = EDMA_GetTableAddress(hEdmaTable);</pre>	

#### 4.7.16 **EDMA\_MK\_CNT** *Makes a value suitable for the EDMA CNT parameter*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre> EDMA_MK_CNT(     elecnt,     frmcnt ) </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	elecnt	Element count: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>EDMA_CNT_ELECNT_OF(x)</code></li> </ul>
	frmcnt	Frame count: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>EDMA_CNT_FRMCNT_OF(x)</code></li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	CNT Value	Constructed parameter value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the EDMA CNT parameter.</p> <p>The default CNT parameter value is <code>EDMA_CNT_DEFAULT</code>.</p> <p>Use of the <i>EDMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct parameter values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	

**Example**

```

UINT32 Cnt;

Cnt = DMA_MK_CNT(0x0100,0x0020);

Cnt = DMA_MK_CNT(
    DMA_CNT_ELCNT_OF(0x0100),
    DMA_CNT_FRMCNT_OF(0x0020)
);

```

#### 4.7.17 **EDMA\_MK\_DST** *Makes a value suitable for the EDMA DST parameter*

<b>Macro</b>	EDMA_MK_DST( dst )	
<b>Arguments</b>	dst	Destination address: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EDMA_DST_DST_OF(x)</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	DST Value	Constructed parameter value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the EDMA DST parameter. Although not really necessary, this macro is included for orthogonality and code readability.</p> <p>The default DST parameter value is EDMA_DST_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>EDMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct parameter values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 Dst;  Dst = DMA_MK_DST(0x80000000);  Dst = DMA_MK_DST(     EDMA_DST_DST_OF(0x80000000) ); </pre>	



4.7.18

EDMA\_MK\_IDX

Makes a value suitable for the EDMA IDX parameter

Macro	<pre>EDMA_MK_IDX(     eleidx,     frmidx )</pre>	
Arguments	eleidx	Element index: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>EDMA_IDX_ELEIDX_OF(x)</li></ul>
	frmidx	Frame index: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>EDMA_IDX_FRMIDX_OF(x)</li></ul>
Return Value	IDX Value	Constructed parameter value
Description	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the EDMA IDX parameter.</p> <p>The default IDX parameter value is EDMA_IDX_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>EDMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct parameter values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
Example	<pre>UINT32 Idx;  Idx = DMA_MK_IDX(0x0100,0x0020);  Idx = DMA_MK_IDX(     DMA_IDX_ELEIDX_OF(0x0100),     DMA_IDX_FRMIDX_OF(0x0020) );</pre>	

**4.7.19 EDMA\_MK\_OPT***Makes a value suitable for the EDMA OPT parameter*

<b>Macro</b>	EDMA_MK_OPT( fs, link, tcc, tcint, dum, d2d, sum, s2d, esize, pri )	
<b>Arguments</b>	fs	Frame sync: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EDMA_OPT_FS_NO</li> <li>EDMA_OPT_FS_YES</li> </ul>
	link	Link flag: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EDMA_OPT_LINK_NO</li> <li>EDMA_OPT_LINK_YES</li> </ul>
	tcc	Transfer complete code: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EDMA_OPT_TCC_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	tcint	Transfer complete interrupt: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EDMA_OPT_TCINT_NO</li> <li>EDMA_OPT_TCINT_YES</li> </ul>
	dum	Destination address update mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EDMA_OPT_DUM_NONE</li> <li>EDMA_OPT_DUM_INC</li> <li>EDMA_OPT_DUM_DEC</li> <li>EDMA_OPT_DUM_IDX</li> </ul>
	d2d	2-Dimensional destination: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EDMA_OPT_2DD_NO</li> <li>EDMA_OPT_2DD_YES</li> </ul>

	sum	Source address update mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>EDMA_OPT_SUM_NONE</li><li>EDMA_OPT_SUM_INC</li><li>EDMA_OPT_SUM_DEC</li><li>EDMA_OPT_SUM_IDX</li></ul>
	s2d	2-Dimensional source: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>EDMA_OPT_2DS_NO</li><li>EDMA_OPT_2DS_YES</li></ul>
	esize	Element size: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>EDMA_OPT_ESIZE_32BIT</li><li>EDMA_OPT_ESIZE_16BIT</li><li>EDMA_OPT_ESIZE_8BIT</li></ul>
	pri	Priority: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>EDMA_OPT_PRI_HIGH</li><li>EDMA_OPT_PRI_LOW</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	OPT Value	Constructed parameter value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the EDMA OPT parameter.</p> <p>The default OPT parameter value is EDMA_OPT_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>EDMA_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct parameter values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	

**Example**

```

UINT32 Opt;

/* you can do this /
Opt = EDMA_MK_OPT(2,0,0,0,1,0,1,0,0,0);

/ or to be more readable, you can do this */
Opt = EDMA_MK_OPT(
    EDMA_OPT_FS_NO,
    EDMA_OPT_LINK_NO,
    EDMA_OPT_TCC_OF(0),
    EDMA_OPT_TCINT_NO,
    EDMA_OPT_DUM_INC,
    EDMA_OPT_2DD_NO,
    EDMA_OPT_SUM_INC,
    EDMA_OPT_2DS_NO,
    EDMA_OPT_ESIZE_32BIT,
    EDMA_OPT_PRI_LOW
);

```

**4.7.20 EDMA\_MK\_RLD***Makes a value suitable for the EDMA RLD parameter***Macro**

```

EDMA_MK_RLD(
    link,
    elerld
)

```

**Arguments**

link

Link address:

- EDMA\_RLD\_LINK\_OF(x)

elerld

Element count reload:

- EDMA\_RLD\_ELRLD\_OF(x)

**Return Value**

RLD Value

Constructed parameter value

**Description**

Use this macro to make a value suitable for the EDMA RLD parameter. You may directly use the device handle returned by `EDMA_AllocT-able()` as the *link* argument.

The default RLD parameter value is `EDMA_RLD_DEFAULT`.

Use of the *EDMA\_MK* macros makes it simpler to construct parameter values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.

Refer to the *TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide* (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.

**Example**

```

UINT32 Rld;
EDMA_HANDLE hEdmaTable;

hEdmaTable = EDMA_AllocTable(-1);

Rld = DMA_MK_RLD(hEdmaTable,0x0020);

Rld = DMA_MK_RLD(
    EDMA_RLD_LINK_OF(hEdmaTable),
    EDMA_RLD_ELRLD_OF(0x0020)
);

```

**4.7.21 EDMA\_MK\_SRC***Makes a value suitable for the EDMA SRC parameter***Macro**

```

EDMA_MK_SRC(
    src
)

```

**Arguments**

src                      Source address:

- EDMA\_SRC\_SRC\_OF(x)

**Return Value**

SRC Value              Constructed parameter value

**Description**

Use this macro to make a value suitable for the EDMA SRC parameter. Although not really necessary, this macro is included for orthogonality and code readability.

The default SRC parameter value is EDMA\_SRC\_DEFAULT.

Use of the *EDMA\_MK* macros makes it simpler to construct parameter values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.

Refer to the *TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide* (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.

**Example**

```

UINT32 Src;

Src = DMA_MK_SRC(0x80000000);

Src = DMA_MK_SRC(
    EDMA_SRC_SRC_OF(0x80000000)
);

```

#### 4.7.22 **EDMA\_Open** *Opens an EDMA channel*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>EDMA_HANDLE EDMA_Open(     int ChanNum,     UINT32 Flags ) ;</pre>		
<b>Arguments</b>	ChanNum	EDMA channel to open:	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• EDMA_CHA_ANY</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_DSPINT</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_TINT0</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_TINT1</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_SDINT</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_EXTINT4</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_EXTINT5</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_EXTINT6</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_EXTINT7</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_TCC8</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_TCC9</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_TCC10</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_TCC11</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_XEVT0</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_REVT0</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_XEVT1</li><li>• EDMA_CHA_REVT1</li></ul>	
	Flags	Open flags, logical OR of any of the following:	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• EDMA_OPEN_RESET</li><li>• EDMA_OPEN_ENABLE</li></ul>	
<b>Return Value</b>	Device Handle	Device handle to be used by other EDMA API function calls.	

<b>Description</b>	<p>Before an EDMA channel can be used, it must first be opened by this function. Once opened, it cannot be opened again until closed. See <code>EDMA_Close()</code>. You have the option of either specifying exactly which physical channel to open or you can let the library pick an unused one for you by specifying <code>EDMA_CHA_ANY</code>. The return value is a unique device handle that you use in subsequent EDMA API calls. If the open fails, <code>EDMA_HINV</code> is returned.</p> <p>If the <code>EDMA_OPEN_RESET</code> is specified, the EDMA channel is reset, the channel interrupt is disabled and cleared. If the <code>EDMA_OPEN_ENABLE</code> flag is specified, the channel will be enabled.</p> <p>If the channel cannot be opened, <code>EDMA_HINV</code> is returned.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for details regarding the EDMA channels.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>EDMA_HQDMA</code></li> </ul> <pre>EDMA_HANDLE hEdma; ... hEdma = EDMA_Open(EDMA_CHA_TINT0, EDMA_OPEN_RESET); ...</pre>

#### 4.7.23 **EDMA\_Reset**

*Resets the given EDMA channel*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void EDMA_Reset(     EDMA_HANDLE hEdma );</pre>
<b>Arguments</b>	<p><code>hEdma</code>      Device handle obtained by <code>EDMA_Open()</code>.</p>
<b>Return Value</b>	<p>none</p>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Resets the given EDMA channel. If you pass <code>EDMA_HINV</code> or <code>INV</code> as the device handle, all channels are reset.</p> <p>The following steps are taken:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The channel is disabled</li> <li>• The channel event flag is cleared</li> </ul> <p>This function accepts the following devices handles:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From <code>EDMA_Open()</code></li> </ul>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>EDMA_Reset(hEdma); EDMA_Reset(INV);</pre>

**4.7.24** **EDMA\_SetChannel**

*Triggers an EDMA channel by writing to appropriate bit in the event set register (ESR)*

---

<b>Function</b>	<code>void EDMA_SetChannel(     EDMA_HANDLE hEdma );</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>hEdma</code> Device handle obtained by <code>EDMA_Open()</code> .
<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	Software triggers an EDMA channel by writing to the appropriate bit in the EDMA event set register (ESR).  This function accepts the following device handles: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From <code>EDMA_Open()</code></li> </ul>
<b>Example</b>	<code>EDMA_SetChannel(hEdma);</code>

**4.7.25** **EDMA\_SUPPORT**

*A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the EDMA module*

---

<b>Constant</b>	<code>EDMA_SUPPORT</code>
<b>Description</b>	Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the EDMA module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.  Note: The EDMA module is not supported on devices that do not have the EDMA peripheral. In these cases, the DMA module is supported instead.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>#if (EDMA_SUPPORT)     /* user EDMA configuration */ #elif (DMA_SUPPORT)     /* user DMA configuration */ #endif</pre>

**4.7.26** **EDMA\_TABLE\_CNT**

*A compile time constant that holds the total number of parameter table entries in the EDMA PRAM*

---

<b>Constant</b>	<code>EDMA_TABLE_CNT</code>
<b>Description</b>	Compile time constant that holds the total number of parameter table entries in the EDMA PRAM.



## 4.8 EMIF

### 4.8.1 **EMIF\_CONFIG** *Structure used to set up the EMIF peripheral*

<b>Structure</b>	EMIF_CONFIG	
<b>Members</b>	UINT32 gblctl	EMIF global control register value
	UINT32 ce0ctl	CE0 space control register value
	UINT32 ce1ctl	CE1 space control register value
	UINT32 ce2ctl	CE2 space control register value
	UINT32 ce3ctl	CE3 space control register value
	UINT32 sdctl	SDRAM control register value
	UINT32 sdtim	SDRAM timing register value
	UINT32 sdext	SDRAM extension register value
<b>Description</b>	This is the EMIF configuration structure used to setup the EMIF peripheral. You create and initialize this structure and then pass its address to the EMIF_ConfigA() function. You can use literal values or the <i>EMIF_MK</i> macros to create the structure member values.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>EMIF_CONFIG MyConfig = {     0x00003060, /* gblctl */     0x00000040, /* ce0ctl */     0x404F0323, /* ce1ctl */     0x00000030, /* ce2ctl */     0x00000030, /* ce3ctl */     0x72270000, /* sdctl  */     0x00000410, /* sdtim  */     0x00000000  /* sdext  */ }; ... EMIF_ConfigA(&amp;MyConfig);</pre>	

### 4.8.2 **EMIF\_ConfigA** *Sets up the EMIF using the configuration structure*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void EMIF_ConfigA(     EMIF_CONFIG *Config );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	Config	Pointer to an initialized configuration structure
<b>Return Value</b>	none	

**Description** Sets up the EMIF using the configuration structure. The values of the structure are written to the EMIF registers. See also `EMIF_ConfigB()` and `EMIF_CONFIG`.

**Example**

```
EMIF_CONFIG MyConfig = {
    0x00003060, /* gblctl */
    0x00000040, /* ce0ctl */
    0x404F0323, /* ce1ctl */
    0x00000030, /* ce2ctl */
    0x00000030, /* ce3ctl */
    0x72270000, /* sdctl */
    0x00000410, /* sdtim */
    0x00000000 /* sdext */
};
...
EMIF_ConfigA(&MyConfig);
```

#### 4.8.3 **EMIF\_ConfigB** *Sets up the EMIF using the register value arguments*

**Function**

```
void EMIF_ConfigB(
    UINT32 gblctl,
    UINT32 ce0ctl,
    UINT32 ce1ctl,
    UINT32 ce2ctl,
    UINT32 ce3ctl,
    UINT32 sdctl,
    UINT32 sdtim,
    UINT32 sdext
);
```

**Arguments**

<code>gblctl</code>	EMIF global control register value
<code>ce0ctl</code>	CE0 space control register value
<code>ce1ctl</code>	CE1 space control register value
<code>ce2ctl</code>	CE2 space control register value
<code>ce3ctl</code>	CE3 space control register value
<code>sdctl</code>	SDRAM control register value
<code>sdtim</code>	SDRAM timing register value
<code>sdext</code>	SDRAM extension register value

**Return Value** none

**Description** Sets up the EMIF using the register value arguments. The arguments are written to the EMIF registers. See also `EMIF_ConfigA()`.

**Example**

```
EMIF_ConfigB(
    0x00003060, /* gblctl */
    0x00000040, /* ce0ctl */
    0x404F0323, /* ce1ctl */
    0x00000030, /* ce2ctl */
    0x00000030, /* ce3ctl */
    0x72270000, /* sdctl */
    0x00000410, /* sdtim */
    0x00000000 /* sdext */
);
```

#### 4.8.4 **EMIF\_MK\_CECTL** *Makes a value suitable for an EMIF CE space control register*

**Macro**

```
EMIF_MK_CECTL(
    rdhld,
    mtype,
    rdstrb,
    ta,
    rdsetup,
    wrhld,
    wrstrb,
    wrsetup
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>rdhld</code>	Read hold:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_RDHLD_OF(x)</code></li> </ul>
<code>mtype</code>	Memory type:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_MTYPE_ASYNC8</code></li> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_MTYPE_ASYNC16</code></li> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_MTYPE_ASYNC32</code></li> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_MTYPE_SDRAM32</code></li> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_MTYPE_SBSRAM32</code></li> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_MTYPE_SDRAM8</code></li> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_MTYPE_SDRAM16</code></li> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_MTYPE_SBSRAM8</code></li> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_MTYPE_SBSRAM16</code></li> </ul>
<code>rdstrb</code>	Read strobe:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>EMIF_CECTL_RDSTRB_OF(x)</code></li> </ul>

	ta	Turn around time:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_CECTL_TA_NA</li> <li>• EMIF_CECTL_TA_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	rdsetup	Read setup:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_CECTL_RDSETUP_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	wrhld	Write hold:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_CECTL_WRHLD_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	wrstrb	Write strobe:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_CECTL_WRSTRB_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	wrsetup	Write setup:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_CECTL_WRSETUP_OF(x)</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	CECTL Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for an EMIF CE space control register.</p> <p>The default CE space control register value is EMIF_CECTL_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>EMIF_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 CeCtl;  /* you can do this / CeCtl = EMIF_MK_CECTL(3,0,0,0,0,0,0,0);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ CeCtl = EMIF_MK_CECTL(     EMIF_CECTL_RDHLD_OF(0),     EMIF_CECTL_MTYPE_SDRAM32,     EMIF_CECTL_RDSTRB_OF(0),     EMIF_CECTL_TA_NA,     EMIF_CECTL_RDSETUP_OF(0),     EMIF_CECTL_WRHLD_OF(0),     EMIF_CECTL_WRSTRB_OF(0),     EMIF_CECTL_WRSETUP_OF(0) ); </pre>	

4.8.5 **EMIF\_MK\_GBLCTL**

*Makes a value suitable for the EMIF global control register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre>EMIF_MK_GBLCTL(     rbtr8,     ssqrt,     clk2en,     clk1en,     sscen,     sdcen,     nohold )</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	rbtr8	<p>Requester arbitration mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_RBTR8_NA</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_RBTR8_HPRI</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_RBTR8_8ACC</li> </ul>
	ssqrt	<p>SBSRAM clock rate select:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_SSCRT_NA</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_SSCRT_CPUOVR2</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_SSCRT_CPU</li> </ul>
	clk2en	<p>CLKOUT2 enable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_CLK2EN_NA</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_CLK2EN_DISABLE</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_CLK2EN_ENABLE</li> </ul>
	clk1en	<p>CLKOUT1 enable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_CLK1EN_DISABLE</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_CLK1EN_ENABLE</li> </ul>
	sscen	<p>SSCLK enable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_SSCEN_NA</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_SSCEN_DISABLE</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_SSCEN_ENABLE</li> </ul>
	sdcen	<p>SDCLK enable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_SDCEN_NA</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_SDCEN_DISABLE</li> <li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_SDCEN_ENABLE</li> </ul>

	nohold	External hold disable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_NOHOLD_0</li><li>• EMIF_GBLCTL_NOHOLD_1</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	GBLCTL Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the EMIF global control register.</p> <p>The default global control register value is EMIF_GBLCTL_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>EMIF_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 GblCtl;  /* you can do this / GblCtl = EMIF_MK_GBLCTL(0,0,1,1,1,0,0);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ GblCtl = EMIF_MK_GBLCTL(     EMIF_GBLCTL_RBTR8_HPRI,     EMIF_GBLCTL_SSCRT_CPUOVR2,     EMIF_GBLCTL_CLK2EN_ENABLE,     EMIF_GBLCTL_CLK1EN_ENABLE,     EMIF_GBLCTL_SSCEN_ENABLE,     EMIF_GBLCTL_SDCEN_DISABLE,     EMIF_GBLCTL_NOHOLD_0 );</pre>	

4.8.6 **EMIF\_MK\_SDCTL**

*Makes a value suitable for the EMIF SDRAM control register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre>EMIF_MK_SDCTL(     trc,     trp,     trcd,     init,     rfen,     sdwid,     sdcsz,     sdrsz,     sdbsz )</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	trc	SDRAM Trc value: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_TRC_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	trp	SDRAM Trp value: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_TRP_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	trcd	SDRAM Trcd value: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_TRCD_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	init	Forces initialization of all SDRAM: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_INIT_NO</li> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_INIT_YES</li> </ul>
	rfen	Refresh enable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_RFEN_DISABLE</li> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_RFEN_ENABLE</li> </ul>
	sdwid	SDRAM width select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_SDWID_NA</li> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_SDWID_4X8BIT</li> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_SDWID_2X16BIT</li> </ul>
	sdcsz	SDRAM column size: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_SDCSZ_NA</li> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_SDCSZ_9COL</li> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_SDCSZ_8COL</li> <li>EMIF_SDCTL_SDCSZ_10COL</li> </ul>

	sdrsz	SDRAM row size:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_SDCTL_SDRSZ_NA</li> <li>• EMIF_SDCTL_SDRSZ_11ROW</li> <li>• EMIF_SDCTL_SDRSZ_12ROW</li> <li>• EMIF_SDCTL_SDRSZ_13ROW</li> </ul>
	sdbsz	SDRAM bank size:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EMIF_SDCTL_SDBSZ_NA</li> <li>• EMIF_SDCTL_SDBSZ_2BANKS</li> <li>• EMIF_SDCTL_SDBSZ_4BANKS</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	SDCTL Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the EMIF SDRAM control register.</p> <p>The default SDRAM control register value is EMIF_SDCTL_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>EMIF_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 SdCtl;  /* you can do this / SdCtl = EMIF_MK_SDCTL(0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ SdCtl = EMIF_MK_SDCTL(     EMIF_SDCTL_TRC_OF(0),     EMIF_SDCTL_TRP_OF(0),     EMIF_SDCTL_TRCD_OF(0),     EMIF_SDCTL_INIT_NO,     EMIF_SDCTL_RFEN_DISABLE,     EMIF_SDCTL_SDWID_4X8BIT,     EMIF_SDCTL_SDCSZ_NA,     EMIF_SDCTL_SDRSZ_11ROW,     EMIF_SDCTL_SDBSZ_NA ); </pre>	



4.8.7 **EMIF\_MK\_SDEXT**

*Makes a value suitable for the EMIF SDRAM extension register*

**Macro**

```
EMIF_MK_SDEXT(  
    tcl,  
    tras,  
    trrd,  
    twr,  
    thzp,  
    rd2rd,  
    rd2deac,  
    rd2wr,  
    r2wdqm,  
    wr2wr,  
    wr2deac,  
    wr2rd  
)
```

**Arguments**

tcl

SDRAM CAS latency:

- EMIF\_SDEXT\_TCL\_OF(x)

tras

SDRAM Tras value:

- EMIF\_SDEXT\_TRAS\_OF(x)

trrd

SDRAM Trrd value:

- EMIF\_SDEXT\_TRRD\_OF(x)

twr

SDRAM Twr value:

- EMIF\_SDEXT\_TWR\_OF(x)

thzp

SDRAM Thzp value:

- EMIF\_SDEXT\_THZP\_OF(x)

rd2rd

Read to read clocks:

- EMIF\_SDEXT\_RD2RD\_OF(x)

rd2deac

Read to DEAC clocks:

- EMIF\_SDEXT\_RD2DEAC\_OF(x)

rd2wr

Read to write cycles:

- EMIF\_SDEXT\_RD2WR\_OF(x)

r2wdqm

BEx high clocks:

- EMIF\_SDEXT\_R2WDQM\_OF(x)

wr2wr

Write to write clocks:

- EMIF\_SDEXT\_WR2WR\_OF(x)

	<code>wr2deac</code>	Write to DEAC cycles:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>EMIF_SDEXT_WR2DEAC_OF(x)</code></li> </ul>
	<code>wr2rd</code>	Write to read cycles:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>EMIF_SDEXT_WR2RD_OF(x)</code></li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	SDEXT Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the EMIF SDRAM extension register.</p> <p>The default SDRAM extension register value is <code>EMIF_SDEXT_DEFAULT</code>.</p> <p>Use of the <i>EMIF_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 SdExt;  /* you can do this / SdExt = EMIF_MK_SDEXT(0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ SdExt = EMIF_MK_SDEXT(     EMIF_SDEXT_TCL_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_TRAS_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_TRRD_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_TWR_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_THZP_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_RD2RD_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_RD2DEAC_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_RD2WR_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_R2WDQM_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_WR2WR_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_WR2DEAC_OF(0),     EMIF_SDEXT_WR2RD_OF(0) ); </pre>	

4.8.8 **EMIF\_MK\_SDTIM**

*Makes a value suitable for the EMIF SDRAM timing register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre>EMIF_MK_SDTIM(     period,     xrfr )</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	period	Refresh period: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EMIF_SDTIM_PERIOD_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	xrfr	Extra refreshes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EMIF_SDTIM_XRFR_NA</li> <li>EMIF_SDTIM_XRFR_OF(x)</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	SDTIM Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the EMIF SDRAM timing register.</p> <p>The default SDRAM timing register value is EMIF_SDTIM_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>EMIF_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 SdTim;  /* you can do this / SdTim = EMIF_MK_SDTIM(0,0);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ SdTim = EMIF_MK_SDTIM(     EMIF_SDTIM_PERIOD_OF(0),     EMIF_SDTIM_XRFR_OF(0) );</pre>	

**4.8.9 EMIF\_SUPPORT**

*A compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the EMIF module*

---

**Constant** EDMA\_SUPPORT

**Description** Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the EMIF module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.

**Example** Currently, all devices support this module.

```
#if (EMIF_SUPPORT)
    /* user EMIF configuration */
#endif
```

## 4.9 HPI

### 4.9.1 **HPI\_GetDspint** *Reads the DSPINT bit from HPIC register*

**Function**      `UINT32 HPI_GetDspint();`  
**Arguments**      `none`  
**Return Value**      `DSPINT`      Returns the value of the DSPINT bit, 0 or 1  
**Description**      This function reads the DSPINT bit from the HPIC register.  
**Example**

```
if (HPI_GetDspint()) {  
    }

```

### 4.9.2 **HPI\_GetEventId** *Obtain the IRQ even associated with the HPI device*

**Function**      `UINT32 HPI_GetEventId();`  
**Arguments**      `none`  
**Return Value**      `Event ID`      Returns the IRQ event for the HPI device  
**Description**      Use this function to obtain the IRQ event associated with the HPI device. Currently this is `IRQ_EVT_DSPINT`.  
**Example**      `HpiEventId = HPI_GetEventId();`

### 4.9.3 **HPI\_GetFetch** *Reads the FETCH flag from the HPIC register and returns its value.*

**Function**      `UINT32 HPI_GetFetch();`  
**Arguments**      `none`  
**Return Value**      `FETCH`      Returns the value of the FETCH flag, 0 or 1  
**Description**      This function reads the FETCH flag from the HPIC register and returns its value.  
**Example**      `flag = HPI_GetFetch();`

### 4.9.4 **HPI\_GetHint** *Returns the value of the HINT bit of the HPIC register*

**Function**      `UINT32 HPI_GetHint();`  
**Arguments**      `none`  
**Return Value**      `HINT`      Returns the value of the HINT bit, 0 or 1  
**Description**      This function returns the value of the HINT bit of the HPIC register.  
**Example**      `hint = HPI_GetHint();`

#### 4.9.5 **HPI\_GetHrdy** *Returns the value of the HRDY bit of the HPIC register*

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 HPI_GetHrdy( );		
<b>Arguments</b>	none		
<b>Return Value</b>	HRDY	Returns the value of the HRDY bit, 0 or 1	
<b>Description</b>	This function returns the value of the HRDY bit of the HPIC register.		
<b>Example</b>	hrdy = HPI_GetHrdy( );		

#### 4.9.6 **HPI\_GetHwob** *Returns the value of the HWOB bit of the HPIC register*

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 HPI_GetHwob( );		
<b>Arguments</b>	none		
<b>Return Value</b>	HWOB	Returns the value of the HWOB bit, 0 or 1	
<b>Description</b>	This function returns the value of the HWOB bit of the HPIC register.		
<b>Example</b>	hwob = HPI_GetHwob( );		

#### 4.9.7 **HPI\_SetDspint** *Writes the value to the DSPINT field of the HPIC register*

<b>Function</b>	void HPI_SetDspint( UINT32 Val );		
<b>Arguments</b>	Val	Value to write to DSPINT: 0 or 1	
<b>Return Value</b>	none		
<b>Description</b>	This function writes the value to the DSPINT file of the HPIC register		
<b>Example</b>	HPI_SetDspint(0); HPI_SetDspint(1);		

#### 4.9.8 **HPI\_SetHint** *Writes the value to the HINT field of the HPIC register*

<b>Function</b>	void HPI_SetHint( UINT32 Val );		
<b>Arguments</b>	Val		
<b>Return Value</b>	none	Value to write to HINT: 0 or 1	

**Description** This function writes the value to the HINT file of the HPIC register

**Example**

```
HPI_SetHint(0);  
HPI_SetHint(1);
```

#### 4.9.9 **HPI\_SUPPORT** *A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the HPI module*

**Constant** HPI\_SUPPORT

**Description** Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the HPI module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.

**Example**

```
#if (HPI_SUPPORT)  
    /* user HPI configuration */  
#endif
```

## 4.10 IRQ

### 4.10.1 **IRQ\_Clear** *Clears the event flag from the IFR register*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void IRQ_Clear(     UINT32 EventId );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	EventId	Event ID. See IRQ_EVT_NNNN for a complete list of events.
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Clears the event flag from the IFR register	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>IRQ_Clear(IRQ_EVT_TINT0);</pre>	

### 4.10.2 **IRQ\_Disable** *Disables the specified event*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void IRQ_Disable(     UINT32 EventId );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	EventId	Event ID. See IRQ_EVT_NNNN for a complete list of events.
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Disables the specified event.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>IRQ_Disable(IRQ_EVT_TINT0);</pre>	

### 4.10.3 **IRQ\_Enable** *Enables the specified event*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void IRQ_Enable(     UINT32 EventId );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	EventId	Event ID. See IRQ_EVT_NNNN for a complete list of events.
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Enables the specified event.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>IRQ_Enable(IRQ_EVT_TINT0);</pre>	



#### 4.10.4 **IRQ\_EVT\_NNNN**

*These are the IRQ events*

<b>Constant</b>	IRQ_EVT_DSPINT
	IRQ_EVT_TINT0
	IRQ_EVT_TINT1
	IRQ_EVT_SDINT
	IRQ_EVT_EXTINT4
	IRQ_EVT_EXTINT5
	IRQ_EVT_EXTINT6
	IRQ_EVT_EXTINT7
	IRQ_EVT_DMAINT0
	IRQ_EVT_DMAINT1
	IRQ_EVT_DMAINT2
	IRQ_EVT_DMAINT3
	IRQ_EVT_EDMAINT
	IRQ_EVT_XINT0
	IRQ_EVT_RINT0
	IRQ_EVT_XINT1
	IRQ_EVT_RINT1
	IRQ_EVT_XINT2
	IRQ_EVT_RINT2
<b>Description</b>	These are the IRQ events. Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for more details regarding the events.

#### 4.10.5 **IRQ\_Map**

*Maps an event to a physical interrupt number by configuring the interrupt selector MUX registers*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void IRQ_Map(     UINT32 EventId,     int IntNumber );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	EventId	Event ID. See IRQ_EVT_NNNN for a complete list of events.
	IntNumber	Interrupt number, 0 to 15
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	This function maps an event to a physical interrupt number by configuring the interrupt selector MUX registers. For most cases, the default map is sufficient and does not need to be changed.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>IRQ_Map( IRQ_EVT_TINT0 , 12 ) ;</pre>	

#### 4.10.6 **IRQ\_Set** *Sets the specified event by writing to the appropriate ISR register*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void IRQ_Set(     UINT32 EventId );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	EventId	Event ID. See IRQ_EVT_NNNN for a complete list of events.
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Sets the specified event by writing to the appropriate ISR register. This basically allows software triggering of events.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>IRQ_Set ( IRQ_EVT_TINT0 );</pre>	

#### 4.10.7 **IRQ\_SUPPORT** *A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the IRQ module*

---

<b>Constant</b>	IRQ_SUPPORT	
<b>Description</b>	Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the IRQ module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.  Currently, all devices support this module.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>#if (IRQ_SUPPORT)     /* user IRQ configuration / #endif</pre>	

#### 4.10.8 **IRQ\_Test** *Allows testing an event to see if its flag is set in the IFR register*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>BOOL IRQ_Test(     UINT32 EventId );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	EventId	Event ID. See IRQ_EVT_NNNN for a complete list of events.
<b>Return Value</b>	Flag	Returns event flag; 0 or 1
<b>Description</b>	Use this function to test an event to see if its flag is set in the IFR register.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>while (!IRQ_Test (IRQ_EVT_TINT0));</pre>	

## 4.11 MCBSP

### 4.11.1 MCBSP\_Close

*Closes a MCBSP port previously opened via MCBSP\_Open( )*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void MCBSP_Close(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port, see MCBSP_Open( )
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	This function closes a MCBSP port previously opened via MCBSP_Open( ). The registers for the MCBSP port are set to their power-on defaults. Any associated interrupts are disabled and cleared.	
<b>Example</b>	MCBSPClose(hMcbasp);	

### 4.11.2 MCBSP\_CONFIG

*Used to setup a MCBSP port*

<b>Structure</b>	MCBSP_CONFIG	
<b>Members</b>	UINT32 spcr	Serial port control register value
	UINT32 rcr	Receive control register value
	UINT32 xcr	Transmit control register value
	UINT32 srgr	Sample rate generator register value
	UINT32 mcr	Multichannel control register value
	UINT32 rcer	Receive channel enable register value
	UINT32 xcer	Transmit channel enable register value
	UINT32 pcr	Pin control register value
<b>Description</b>	This is the MCBSP configuration structure used to set up a MCBSP port. You create and initialize this structure and then pass its address to the MCBSP_ConfigA( ) function. You can use literal values or the <i>MCBSP_MK</i> macros to create the structure member values.	

**Example**

```
MCBSP_CONFIG MyConfig = {
    0x00012001, /* spcr */
    0x00010140, /* rcr  */
    0x00010140, /* xcr  */
    0x00000000, /* srgr */
    0x00000000, /* mcr  */
    0x00000000, /* rcer */
    0x00000000, /* xcer */
    0x00000000 /* pcr  */
};
...
MCBSP_ConfigA(hMcbasp, &MyConfig);
```

#### 4.11.3 MCBSP\_ConfigA

*Sets up the MCBSP port using the configuration structure*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void MCBSP_ConfigA(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp,     MCBSP_CONFIG *Config );</pre>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table border="0"><tr><td>hMcbasp</td><td>Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )</td></tr><tr><td>Config</td><td>Pointer to an initialized configuration structure</td></tr></table>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )	Config	Pointer to an initialized configuration structure
hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )				
Config	Pointer to an initialized configuration structure				
<b>Return Value</b>	none				
<b>Description</b>	Sets up the MCBSP port using the configuration structure. The values of the structure are written to the port registers. The serial port control register ( <i>spcr</i> ) is written last. See also MCBSP_ConfigB( ) and MCBSP_CONFIG.				
<b>Example</b>	<pre>MCBSP_CONFIG MyConfig = {     0x00012001, /* spcr */     0x00010140, /* rcr  */     0x00010140, /* xcr  */     0x00000000, /* srgr */     0x00000000, /* mcr  */     0x00000000, /* rcer */     0x00000000, /* xcer */     0x00000000 /* pcr  */ }; ... MCBSP_ConfigA(hMcbasp, &amp;MyConfig);</pre>				

4.11.4 **MCBSP\_ConfigB**

*Sets up the MCBSP port using the register values passed in*

**Function**

```
void MCBSP_ConfigB(
    MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp,
    UINT32 spcr,
    UINT32 rcr,
    UINT32 xcr,
    UINT32 srgr,
    UINT32 mcr,
    UINT32 rcer,
    UINT32 xcer,
    UINT32 pcr
);
```

**Arguments**

hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )
spcr	Serial port control register value
rcr	Receive control register value
xcr	Transmit control register value
srgr	Sample rate generator register value
mcr	Multichannel control register value
rcer	Receive channel enable register value
xcer	Transmit channel enable register value
pcr	Pin control register value

**Return Value** none

**Description** Sets up the MCBSP port using the register values passed in. The register values are written to the port registers. The serial port control register (*spcr*) is written last. See also MCBSP\_ConfigA( ).

You may use literal values for the arguments or for readability. You may use the *MCBSP\_MK* macros to create the register values based on field values.

**Example**

```
MCBSP_ConfigB(hMcbasp,
    0x00012001, /* spcr */
    0x00010140, /* rcr */
    0x00010140, /* xcr */
    0x00000000, /* srgr */
    0x00000000, /* mcr */
    0x00000000, /* rcer */
    0x00000000, /* xcer */
    0x00000000 /* pcr */
);
```

**4.11.5 MCBSP\_EnableFsync** *Enables the frame sync generator for the given port*

---

<b>Function</b>	<code>void MCBSP_EnableFsync(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>hMcbasp</code> Handle to MCBSP port. See <code>MCBSP_Open()</code>
<b>Return Value</b>	<code>none</code>
<b>Description</b>	Use this function to enable the frame sync generator for the given port.
<b>Example</b>	<code>MCBSP_EnableFsync(hMcbasp);</code>

**4.11.6 MCBSP\_EnableRcv** *Enables the receiver for the given port*

---

<b>Function</b>	<code>void MCBSP_EnableRcv(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>hMcbasp</code> Handle to MCBSP port. See <code>MCBSP_Open()</code>
<b>Return Value</b>	<code>none</code>
<b>Description</b>	Use this function to enable the receiver for the given port.
<b>Example</b>	<code>MCBSP_EnableRcv(hMcbasp);</code>

**4.11.7 MCBSP\_EnableSrgr** *Enables the sample rate generator for the given port*

---

<b>Function</b>	<code>void MCBSP_EnableSrgr(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>hMcbasp</code> Handle to MCBSP port. See <code>MCBSP_Open()</code>
<b>Return Value</b>	<code>none</code>
<b>Description</b>	Use this function to enable the sample rate generator for the given port.
<b>Example</b>	<code>MCBSP_EnableSrgr(hMcbasp);</code>

#### 4.11.8 **MCBSP\_EnableXmt** *Enables the transmitter for the given port*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void MCBSP_EnableXmt(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Use this function to enable the transmitter for the given port.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>MCBSP_EnableXmt(hMcbasp);</pre>	

#### 4.11.9 **MCBSP\_GetPins** *Reads the values of the port pins when configured as general purpose I/Os*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>UINT32 MCBSP_GetPins(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )
<b>Return Value</b>	Pin Mask	Bit-Mask of pin values <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_CLKX</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_FSX</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_DX</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_CLKR</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_FSR</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_DR</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_CLKS</li> </ul>
<b>Description</b>	This function reads the values of the port pins when configured as general purpose input/outputs.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 PinMask; ... PinMask = MCBSP_GetPins(hMcbasp); if (PinMask &amp; MCBSP_PIN_DR) {     ... }</pre>	

#### 4.11.10 **MCBSP\_GetRcvAddr** *Returns the address of the data receive register (DRR)*

---

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 MCBSP_GetRcvAddr( MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )
<b>Return Value</b>	Receive Address	DRR register address
<b>Description</b>	Returns the address of the data receive register, DRR. This value is needed when setting up DMA transfers to read from the serial port. See also MCBSP_GetXmtAddr( ).	
<b>Example</b>	Addr = MCBSP_GetRcvAddr(hMcbasp);	

#### 4.11.11 **MCBSP\_GetRcvEventId** *Retrieves the transmit event ID for the given port*

---

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 MCBSP_GetRcvEventId( MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )
<b>Return Value</b>	Receive Event ID	Receiver event ID
<b>Description</b>	Retrieves the receive event ID for the given port.	
<b>Example</b>	UINT32 RecvEventId; ... RecvEventId = MCBSP_GetRcvEventId(hMcbasp); IRQ_Enable(RecvEventId);	

#### 4.11.12 **MCBSP\_GetXmtAddr** *Returns the address of the data transmit register, DXR*

---

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 MCBSP_GetXmtEventId( MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )
<b>Return Value</b>	Transmit Address	DXR register address
<b>Description</b>	Returns the address of the data transmit register, DXR. This value is needed when setting up DMA transfers to write to the serial port. See also MCBSP_GetRcvAddr( ).	
<b>Example</b>	Addr = MCBSP_GetXmtAddr(hMcbasp);	



#### 4.11.13 **MCBSP\_GetXmtEventId** *Retrieves the transmit event ID for the given port*

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 MCBSP_GetXmtEventId( MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open()
<b>Return Value</b>	Transmit Event ID	Event ID of transmitter
<b>Description</b>	Retrieves the transmit event ID for the given port.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 XmtEventId; ... XmtEventId = MCBSP_GetXmtEventId(hMcbasp); IRQ_Enable(XmtEventId); </pre>	

#### 4.11.14 **MCBSP\_MK\_MCR** *Makes a value suitable for the multichannel control register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre> MCBSP_MK_MCR(     rmc,     rpablk,     rpbbk,     xmc,     xpablk,     xpbbk ) </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	rmc	Receive multichannel selection enable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_RMC_CHENABLE</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_RMC_ELDISABLE</li> </ul>
	rpablk	Receive partition A subframe: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_RPABLK_SF0</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_RPABLK_SF2</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_RPABLK_SF4</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_RPABLK_SF6</li> </ul>
	rpbbk	Receive partition B subframe: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_RPBBLK_SF1</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_RPBBLK_SF3</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_RPBBLK_SF5</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_RPBBLK_SF7</li> </ul>

	xmcm	<p>Transmit multichannel selection enable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XMCM_ENNOMASK</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XMCM_DISXP</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XMCM_ENMASK</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XMCM_DISRP</li> </ul>
	xpablk	<p>Transmit partition A subframe:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XPABLK_SF0</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XPABLK_SF2</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XPABLK_SF4</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XPABLK_SF6</li> </ul>
	xpbblk	<p>Transmit partition B subframe:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XPBBLK_SF1</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XPBBLK_SF3</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XPBBLK_SF5</li> <li>• MCBSP_MCR_XPBBLK_SF7</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	MCR Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the multichannel control register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is MCBSP_MCR_DEFAULT .</p> <p>Use of the <i>MCBSP_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	

**Example**

```

UINT32 Mcr;

/* you can do this /
Mcr = MCBSP_MK_MCR(0,0,0,0,0,0);

/ or to be more readable, you can do this */
Mcr = MCBSP_MK_MCR(
    MCBSP_MCR_RMCM_CHENABLE,
    MCBSP_MCR_RPABLK_SF0,
    MCBSP_MCR_RPBBLK_SF1,
    MCBSP_MCR_XMCM_ENNOMASK,
    MCBSP_MCR_XPABLK_SF0,
    MCBSP_MCR_XPBBLK_SF1
);

```

**4.11.15 MCBSP\_MK\_PCR***Makes a value suitable for the pin control register***Macro**

```

MCBSP_MK_PCR(
    clkrp,
    clkxp,
    fsrp,
    fsxp,
    dxstat,
    clksstat,
    clkrm,
    clkxm,
    fsm,
    fsm,
    fsm,
    rioen,
    xioen
)

```

**Arguments**

clkrp	Receive clock polarity:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_PCR_CLKRP_FALLING</li> <li>• MCBSP_PCR_CLKRP_RISING</li> </ul>
clkxp	Transmit clock polarity:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_PCR_CLKXP_RISING</li> <li>• MCBSP_PCR_CLKXP_FALLING</li> </ul>
fsrp	Receive frame sync polarity:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_PCR_FSRP_ACTIVEHIGH</li> <li>• MCBSP_PCR_FSRP_ACTIVELOW</li> </ul>

fsxp	Transmit frame sync polarity:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_PCR_FSXP_ACTIVEHIGH</li><li>• MCBSP_PCR_FSXP_ACTIVELOW</li></ul>
dxstat	DX pin status:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_PCR_DXSTAT_0</li><li>• MCBSP_PCR_DXSTAT_1</li></ul>
clksstat	CLKS pin status:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_PCR_CLKSSTAT_0</li><li>• MCBSP_PCR_CLKSSTAT_1</li></ul>
clkrm	Receiver clock mode:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_PCR_CLKRM_INPUT</li><li>• MCBSP_PCR_CLKRM_OUTPUT</li></ul>
clkxm	Transmitter clock mode:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_PCR_CLKXM_INPUT</li><li>• MCBSP_PCR_CLKXM_OUTPUT</li></ul>
fsrcm	Receive frame sync mode:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_PCR_FSRM_EXTERNAL</li><li>• MCBSP_PCR_FSRM_INTERNAL</li></ul>
fsxm	Transmit frame sync mode:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_PCR_FSXM_EXTERNAL</li><li>• MCBSP_PCR_FSXM_INTERNAL</li></ul>
rioen	Receiver general purpose IO mode:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_PCR_RIOEN_SP</li><li>• MCBSP_PCR_RIOEN_GPIO</li></ul>
xioen	Transmitter general purpose IO mode:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_PCR_XIOEN_SP</li><li>• MCBSP_PCR_XIOEN_GPIO</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	PCR Value      Constructed register value

**Description** Use this macro to make a value suitable for the pin control register. The power-on default value is `MCBSP_PCR_DEFAULT`. Use of the `MCBSP_MK` macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.

Refer to the *TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide* (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.

**Example**

```
UINT32 Pcr;

/* you can do this /
Pcr = MCBSP_MK_PCR(0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0);

/ or to be more readable, you can do this */
Pcr = MCBSP_MK_PCR(
    MCBSP_PCR_CLKRP_FALLING,
    MCBSP_PCR_CLKXP_RISING,
    MCBSP_PCR_FSRP_ACTIVEHIGH,
    MCBSP_PCR_FSXP_ACTIVEHIGH,
    MCBSP_PCR_DXSTAT_0,
    MCBSP_PCR_CLKSSTAT_0,
    MCBSP_PCR_CLKRM_INPUT,
    MCBSP_PCR_CLKXM_INPUT,
    MCBSP_PCR_FSRM_EXTERNAL,
    MCBSP_PCR_FSXM_EXTERNAL,
    MCBSP_PCR_RIOEN_SP,
    MCBSP_PCR_XIOEN_SP
);
```

#### 4.11.16 **MCBSP\_MK\_RCER**

*Makes a value suitable for the receive channel enable register*

<b>Macro</b>	MCBSP_MK_RCER( rcea, rceb )	
<b>Arguments</b>	rcea	Receive channel enable bit-mask A: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>MCBSP_RCER_RCEA_OF(x)</code></li></ul>
	rceb	Receive channel enable bit-mask B: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>MCBSP_RCER_RCEB_OF(x)</code></li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	RCER Value	Constructed register value

<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the receive channel enable register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is <code>MCBSP_RCER_DEFAULT</code>.</p> <p>Use of the <code>MCBSP_MK</code> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 Rcer;  /* you can do this / Rcer = MCBSP_MK_RCER(0x0000,0x0000);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ Rcer = MCBSP_MK_RCER(     MCBSP_RCER_RCEA_OF(0x0000),     MCBSP_RCER_RCEB_OF(0x0000) ); </pre>

#### 4.11.17 **MCBSP\_MK\_RCR** Makes a value suitable for the receive control register

<b>Macro</b>	<pre> MCBSP_MK_RCR(     rwdrevrs,     rwdlen1,     rfrlen1,     rphase2,     rdatdly,     rfig,     rcompand,     rwdlen2,     rfrlen2,     rphase ) </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>rwdrevrs</code>	<p>Receive 32-bit reversal:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>MCBSP_RCR_RWDREVRS_NA</code></li> <li>• <code>MCBSP_RCR_RWDREVRS_DISABLE</code></li> <li>• <code>MCBSP_RCR_RWDREVRS_ENABLE</code></li> </ul>

rwrlen1	<p>Receive element length in phase 1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN1_8BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN1_12BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN1_16BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN1_20BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN1_24BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN1_32BIT</li> </ul>
rfrlen1	<p>Receive frame length in phase 1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RFRLLEN1_OF(x)</li> </ul>
rphase2	<p>Receive phase 2:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RPHASE2_NA</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RPHASE2_NORMAL</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RPHASE2_OPPOSITE</li> </ul>
rdatdly	<p>Receive data delay:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RDATDLY_0BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RDATDLY_1BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RDATDLY_2BIT</li> </ul>
rfig	<p>Receive frame ignore:</p> <p>MCBSP_RCR_RFIG_YES</p> <p>MCBSP_RCR_RFIG_NO</p>
rcompand	<p>Receive companding mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RCOMPAND_MSB</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RCOMPAND_8BITLSB</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RCOMPAND_ULAW</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RCOMPAND_ALAW</li> </ul>
rwrlen2	<p>Receive element length in phase 2:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN2_8BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN2_12BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN2_16BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN2_20BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN2_24BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN2_32BIT</li> </ul>

	rfrlen2	Receive frame length in phase 2: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MCBSP_RCR_RFRLEN2_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	rphase	Receive phases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MCBSP_RCR_RPHASE_SINGLE</li> <li>MCBSP_RCR_RPHASE_DUAL</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	RCR Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the receive control register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is MCBSP_RCR_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>MCBSP_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 Rcr;  /* you can do this / Rcr = MCBSP_MK_RCR(0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ Rcr = MCBSP_MK_RCR(     MCBSP_RCR_RWDREVR5_NA,     MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN1_8BIT,     MCBSP_RCR_RFRLEN1_OF(0),     MCBSP_RCR_RPHASE2_NA,     MCBSP_RCR_RDATDLY_0BIT,     MCBSP_RCR_RFIG_YES,     MCBSP_RCR_RCOMPAND_MSB,     MCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN2_8BIT,     MCBSP_RCR_RFRLEN2_OF(0),     MCBSP_RCR_RPHASE_SINGLE ); </pre>	



**4.11.18 MCBSP\_MK\_SPCR**

*Makes a value suitable for the serial port control register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre> MCBSP_MK_SPCR(     rrst,     rintm,     dxena,     clkstp,     rjust,     dl原因,     xrst,     xintm,     grst,     frst ) </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	rrst	Receiver reset: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_RRST_YES</li> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_RRST_NO</li> </ul>
	rintm	Receiver interrupt mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_RINTM_RRDY</li> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_RINTM_EOS</li> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_RINTM_FRM</li> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_RINTM_RSYNCERR</li> </ul>
	dxena	DX enabler: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_DXENA_NA</li> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_DXENA_OFF</li> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_DXENA_ON</li> </ul>
	clkstp	Clock stop mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_CLKSTP_DISABLE</li> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_CLKSTP_NODELAY</li> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_CLKSTP_DELAY</li> </ul>
	rjust	Receive data justification mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_RJUST_RZF</li> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_RJUST_RSE</li> <li>• MCBSP_SPCR_RJUST_LZF</li> </ul>

	dlb	Digital loopback mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_DLB_OFF</li><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_DLB_ON</li></ul>
	xrst	Transmitter reset: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_XRST_YES</li><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_XRST_NO</li></ul>
	xintm	Transmitter interrupt mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_XINTM_XRDY</li><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_XINTM_EOS</li><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_XINTM_FRM</li><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_XINTM_XSYNCERR</li></ul>
	grst	Sample rate generator reset: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_GRST_YES</li><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_GRST_NO</li></ul>
	frst	Frame sync generator reset: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_FRST_YES</li><li>• MCBSP_SPCR_FRST_NO</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	SPCR Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the serial port control register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is <code>MCBSP_SPCR_DEFAULT</code>.</p> <p>Use of the <i>MCBSP_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	

**Example**

```

UINT32 Spcr;

/* you can do this /
Spcr = MCBSP_MK_SPCR(0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0);

/ or to be more readable, you can do this */
Spcr = MCBSP_MK_SPCR(
    MCBSP_SPCR_RRST_YES,
    MCBSP_SPCR_RINTM_RRDY,
    MCBSP_SPCR_DXENA_NA,
    MCBSP_SPCR_CLKSTP_DISABLE,
    MCBSP_SPCR_RJUST_RZF,
    MCBSP_SPCR_DLB_OFF,
    MCBSP_SPCR_XRST_YES,
    MCBSP_SPCR_XINTM_XRDY,
    MCBSP_SPCR_GRST_YES,
    MCBSP_SPCR_FRST_YES
);

```

**4.11.19 MCBSP\_MK\_SRGR**

*Makes a value suitable for the sample rate generator register*

**Macro**

```

MCBSP_MK_SRGR(
    clkgdv,
    fwid,
    fper,
    fsgm,
    clksm,
    clksp,
    gsync
)

```

**Arguments**

clkgdv	Clock divider:
	• MCBSP_SRGR_CLKGDV_OF(x)
fwid	Frame width:
	• MCBSP_SRGR_FWID_OF(x)
fper	Frame period:
	• MCBSP_SRGR_FPER_OF(x)
fsgm	Transmit frame sync mode:
	• MCBSP_SRGR_FSGM_DXR2XSR
	• MCBSP_SRGR_FSGM_FSG

	clksm	Clock mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_SRGR_CLKSM_CLKS</li> <li>• MCBSP_SRGR_CLKSM_INTERNAL</li> </ul>
	clksp	CLKS polarity clock edge select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_SRGR_CLKSP_RISING</li> <li>• MCBSP_SRGR_CLKSP_FALLING</li> </ul>
	gsync	Clock synchronization: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_SRGR_GSYNC_FREE</li> <li>• MCBSP_SRGR_GSYNC_SYNC</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	SRGR Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	Use this macro to make a value suitable for the sample rate generator register.  The power-on default value is MCBSP_SRGR_DEFAULT.  Use of the <i>MCBSP_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.	
<b>Example</b>	Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.  <pre> UINT32 Srgr;  /* you can do this / Srgr = MCBSP_MK_SRGR(0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ Srgr = MCBSP_MK_SRGR(     MCBSP_SRGR_CLKGDV_OF(0),     MCBSP_SRGR_FWID_OF(0),     MCBSP_SRGR_FPER_OF(0),     MCBSP_SRGR_FSGM_DXR2XSR,     MCBSP_SRGR_CLKSM_CLKS,     MCBSP_SRGR_CLKSP_RISING,     MCBSP_SRGR_GSYNC_FREE );           </pre>	

4.11.20 **MCBSP\_MK\_XCER**

*Makes a value suitable for the transmit channel enable register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre>MCBSP_MK_XCER(     xcea,     xceb )</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	xcea	Transmit channel enable bit-mask A: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MCBSP_XCER_XCEA_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	xceb	Transmit channel enable bit-mask B: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MCBSP_XCER_XCEB_OF(x)</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	XCER Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the transmit channel enable register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is MCBSP_XCER_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>MCBSP_MK</i> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>UINT32 Xcer;  /* you can do this / Xcer = MCBSP_MK_XCER(0x0000,0x0000);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ Xcer = MCBSP_MK_XCER(     MCBSP_XCER_XCEA_OF(0x0000),     MCBSP_XCER_XCEB_OF(0x0000) );</pre>	

#### 4.11.21 **MCBSP\_MK\_XCR** *Makes a value suitable for the transmit control register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre> MCBSP_MK_XCR(     xwdrevrs,     xwdlen1,     xfrlen1,     xphase2,     xdatdly,     xfig,     xcompand,     xwdlen2,     xfrlen2,     xphase ) </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	xwdrevrs	Transmit 32-bit reversal: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDREVRs_NA</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDREVRs_DISABLE</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDREVRs_ENABLE</li> </ul>
	xwdlen1	Transmit element length in phase 1: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN1_8BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN1_12BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN1_16BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN1_20BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN1_24BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN1_32BIT</li> </ul>
	xfrlen1	Transmit frame length in phase 1: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XFRLEN1_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	xphase2	Transmit phase 2: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XPHASE2_NA</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XPHASE2_NORMAL</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XPHASE2_OPPOSITE</li> </ul>
	xdatdly	Transmit data delay: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XDATDLY_0BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XDATDLY_1BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XDATDLY_2BIT</li> </ul>

	xfig	Transmit frame ignore:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XFIG_YES</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XFIG_NO</li> </ul>
	xcompand	Transmit companding mode:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XCOMPAND_MSB</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XCOMPAND_8BITLSB</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XCOMPAND_ULAW</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XCOMPAND_ALAW</li> </ul>
	xwdlen2	Transmit element length in phase 2:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN2_8BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN2_12BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN2_16BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN2_20BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN2_24BIT</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN2_32BIT</li> </ul>
	xfrlen2	Transmit frame length in phase 2:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XFRLLEN2_OF(x)</li> </ul>
	xphase	Transmit phases:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XPHASE_SINGLE</li> <li>• MCBSP_XCR_XPHASE_DUAL</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	XCR Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the transmit control register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is <code>MCBSP_XCR_DEFAULT</code>.</p> <p>Use of the <code>MCBSP_MK</code> macros makes it simpler to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	

**Example**

```
UINT32 Xcr;

/* you can do this /
Xcr = MCBSP_MK_XCR(0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0);

/ or to be more readable, you can do this */
Xcr = MCBSP_MK_XCR(
    MCBSP_XCR_XWDREVRN_NA,
    MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN1_8BIT,
    MCBSP_XCR_XFRLN1_OF(0),
    MCBSP_XCR_XPHASE2_NA,
    MCBSP_XCR_XDATDLY_0BIT,
    MCBSP_XCR_XFIG_YES,
    MCBSP_XCR_XCOMPAND_MSB,
    MCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN2_8BIT,
    MCBSP_XCR_XFRLN2_OF(0),
    MCBSP_XCR_XPHASE_SINGLE
);
```

**4.11.22 MCBSP\_Open** *Opens a McBSP port for use*

<b>Function</b>	MCBSP_HANDLE MCBSP_Open( int DevNum, UINT32 Flags );	
<b>Arguments</b>	DevNum	MCBSP device (port) number: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_DEV0</li><li>• MCBSP_DEV1</li><li>• MCBSP_DEV2*</li></ul>
	Flags	Open flags; may be logical OR of any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MCBSP_OPEN_RESET</li></ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	Device Handle	Returns a device handle
<b>Description</b>	<p>Before a MCBSP port can be used, it must first be opened by this function. Once opened, it cannot be opened again until closed. See <code>MCBSP_Close()</code>. The return value is a unique device handle that you use in subsequent MCBSP API calls. If the open fails, <code>INV</code> is returned.</p> <p>If the <code>MCBSP_OPEN_RESET</code> is specified, the MCBSP port registers are set to their power-on defaults and any associated interrupts are disabled and cleared.</p>	



**Example**

```
MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp;
...
hMcbasp =
MCBSP_Open(MCBSP_DEV0, MCBSP_OPEN_RESET);
```

**4.11.23 MCBSP\_PORT\_CNT**

*Compile time constant that holds the number of serial ports present on the current device*

---

**Constant**

MCBSP\_PORT\_CNT

**Description**

Compile time constant that holds the number of serial ports present on the current device.

**Example**

```
#if (MCBSP_PORT_CNT==3)
...
#endif
```

**4.11.24 MCBSP\_Read**

*Performs a direct 32-bit read of the data receive register DRR*

---

**Function**

```
UINT32 MCBSP_Read(
    MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp
);
```

**Arguments**

hMcbasp      Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP\_Open( )

**Return Value**

Data

**Description**

This function performs a direct 32-bit read of the data receive register DRR.

**Example**

```
Data = MCBSP_Read(hMcbasp);
```

**4.11.25 MCBSP\_Reset**

*Resets the given serial port*

---

**Function**

```
void MCBSP_Reset(
    MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp
);
```

**Arguments**

hMcbasp      Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP\_Open( )

**Return Value**

none

<b>Description</b>	Resets the given serial port. If you use <code>INV</code> for <code>hMcbbsp</code> , all serial ports are reset.  Actions Taken: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• All serial port registers are set to their power-on defaults.</li><li>• All associated interrupts are disabled and cleared</li></ul>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>MCBSP_Reset(hMcbbsp); MCBSP_Reset(INV);</pre>

#### 4.11.26 **MCBSP\_Rfull** *Reads the RFULL bit of the serial port control register*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>BOOL MCBSP_Rfull(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbbsp );</pre>
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>hMcbbsp</code> Handle to MCBSP port. See <code>MCBSP_Open()</code>
<b>Return Value</b>	<code>RFULL</code> Returns <code>RFULL</code> status bit of <code>SPCR</code> register; 0 or 1
<b>Description</b>	This function reads the <code>RFULL</code> bit of the serial port control register. A 1 indicates a receive shift register full error.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>if (MCBSP_Rfull(hMcbbsp)) {     ... }</pre>

#### 4.11.27 **MCBSP\_Rrdy** *Reads the RRDY status bit of the SPCR register*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>BOOL MCBSP_Rrdy(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbbsp );</pre>
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>hMcbbsp</code> Handle to MCBSP port. See <code>MCBSP_Open()</code>
<b>Return Value</b>	<code>RRDY</code> Returns <code>RRDY</code> status bit of <code>SPCR</code> ; 0 or 1
<b>Description</b>	Reads the <code>RRDY</code> status bit of the <code>SPCR</code> register. A 1 indicates the receiver is ready with data to be read.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>if (MCBSP_Rrdy(hMcbbsp)) {     ... }</pre>

#### 4.11.28 **MCBSP\_RsyncErr** *Reads the RSYNCERR status bit of the SPCR register*

<b>Function</b>	<pre> BOOL MCBSP_RsyncErr(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp ); </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )
<b>Return Value</b>	RSYNCERR	Returns RSYNCERR bit of the SPCR register; 0 or 1
<b>Description</b>	Reads the RSYNCERR status bit of the SPCR register. A 1 indicates a receiver frame sync error.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> if (MCBSP_RsyncErr(hMcbasp)) {     ... } </pre>	

#### 4.11.29 **MCBSP\_SetPins** *Sets the state of the serial port pins when configured as general purpose IO*

<b>Function</b>	<pre> void MCBSP_SetPins(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp,     UINT32 Pins ); </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )
	Pins	Bit-mask of pin values (logical OR) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_CLKX</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_FSX</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_DX</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_CLKR</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_FSR</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_DR</li> <li>• MCBSP_PIN_CLKS</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Use this function to set the state of the serial port pins when configured as general purpose IO.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> MCBSP_SetPins(hMcbasp,     MCBSP_PIN_FSX       MCBSP_PIN_DX ); </pre>	

#### 4.11.30 **MCBSP\_SUPPORT** *A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the MCBSP module*

---

<b>Constant</b>	MCBSP_SUPPORT
<b>Description</b>	Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the MCBSP module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.  Currently, all devices support this module.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>#if (MCBSP_SUPPORT) /* user MCBSP configuration */ #endif</pre>

#### 4.11.31 **MCBSP\_Write** *Writes a 32-bit value directly to the serial port data transmit register, DXR*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void MCBSP_Write(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp,     UINT32 Val );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )
	Val	32-bit data value
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Use this function to directly write a 32-bit value to the serial port data transmit register, DXR.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>MCBSP_Write(hMcbasp, 0x12345678);</pre>	

#### 4.11.32 **MCBSP\_Xempty** *Reads the XEMPTY bit from the SPCR register*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>BOOL MCBSP_Xempty(     MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbasp );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hMcbasp	Handle to MCBSP port. See MCBSP_Open( )
<b>Return Value</b>	XEMPTY	Returns XEMPTY bit of SPCR register; 0 or 1
<b>Description</b>	Reads the XEMPTY bit from the SPCR register. A 0 indicates the transmit shift (XSR) is empty.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>if (MCBSP_Xempty(hMcbasp)) {     ... }</pre>	

#### 4.11.33 **MCBSP\_Xrdy** *Reads the XRDY status bit of the SPCR register*

**Function** `BOOL MCBSP_Xrdy(  
    MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbbsp  
);`

**Arguments** `hMcbbsp`      Handle to MCBSP port. See `MCBSP_Open()`

**Return Value** `XRDY`      Returns XRDY status bit of SPCR; 0 or 1

**Description** Reads the XRDY status bit of the SPCR register. A 1 indicates the transmitter is ready to be written to.

**Example**

```
if (MCBSP_Xrdy(hMcbbsp)) {  
    ...  
}
```

#### 4.11.34 **MCBSP\_XsyncErr** *Reads the XSYNCERR status bit of the SPCR register*

**Function** `BOOL MCBSP_XsyncErr(  
    MCBSP_HANDLE hMcbbsp  
);`

**Arguments** `hMcbbsp`      Handle to MCBSP port. See `MCBSP_Open()`

**Return Value** `XSYNCERR`      Returns XSYNCERR bit of the SPCR register; 0 or 1

**Description** Reads the XSYNCERR status bit of the SPCR register. A 1 indicates a transmitter frame sync error.

**Example**

```
if (MCBSP_XsyncErr(hMcbbsp)) {  
    ...  
}
```

## 4.12 PWR

### 4.12.1 **PWR\_ConfigB** *Sets up the power-down logic using the register value passed in*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void PWR_ConfigB(     UINT32 pdctl );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	pdctl	Power-down control register value
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets up the power-down logic using the register value passed in.</p> <p>You may use literal values for the argument or for readability. You may use the <i>PWR_MK_PDCTL</i> macro to create the register value based on field values.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>PWR_ConfigB(0x00000000);</pre>	

### 4.12.2 **PWR\_MK\_PDCTL** *Makes a value suitable for the power-down control register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre>PWR_MK_PDCTL(     dma,     emif,     mcbssp0,     mcbssp1,     mcbssp2 )</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	dma	<p>DMA clock enable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PWR_PDCTL_DMA_CLKON</li> <li>• PWR_PDCTL_DMA_CLKOFF</li> </ul>
	emif	<p>EMIF clock enable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PWR_PDCTL_EMIF_CLKON</li> <li>• PWR_PDCTL_EMIF_CLKOFF</li> </ul>
	mcbssp0	<p>MCBSP0 clock enable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PWR_PDCTL_MCBSP0_CLKON</li> <li>• PWR_PDCTL_MCBSP0_CLKOFF</li> </ul>
	mcbssp1	<p>MCBSP1 clock enable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PWR_PDCTL_MCBSP1_CLKON</li> <li>• PWR_PDCTL_MCBSP1_CLKOFF</li> </ul>

	mcbssp2	MCBSP2 clock enable:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PWR_PDCTL_MCBSP2_CLKON</li> <li>• PWR_PDCTL_MCBSP2_CLKOFF</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	PDCTL Value	Constructed register value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the power-down control register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is PWR_PDCTL_DEFAULT.</p> <p>Use of the <i>PWR_MK_PDCTL</i> macro makes it easier to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 PdCtl;  /* you can do this / PdCtl = PWR_MK_PDCTL(0,0,0,0,0);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ PdCtl = PWR_MK_PDCTL(     PWR_PDCTL_DMA_CLKON,     PWR_PDCTL_EMIF_CLKON,     PWR_PDCTL_MCBSP0_CLKON,     PWR_PDCTL_MCBSP1_CLKON,     PWR_PDCTL_MCBSP2_CLKON ); </pre>	

#### 4.12.3 PWR\_PowerDown

*Forces the DSP to enter a power-down state*

<b>Function</b>	<pre> void PWR_PowerDown(     PWR_MODE mode ); </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	mode	<b>Power-down mode:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PWR_NONE</li> <li>• PWR_PD1A</li> <li>• PWR_PD1B</li> <li>• PWR_PD2</li> <li>• PWR_PD3</li> <li>• PWR_IDLE</li> </ul>

<b>Return Value</b>	none
<b>Description</b>	Calling this function forces the DSP to enter a power-down state. Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for a description of the power-down modes.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>PWR_PowerDown(PWR_PD2);</pre>

#### 4.12.4 **PWR\_SUPPORT** *A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the PWR module*

---

<b>Constant</b>	PWR_SUPPORT
<b>Description</b>	Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the PWR module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.  Currently, all devices support this module.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>#if (PWR_SUPPORT)     /* user PWR configuration */ #endif</pre>



## 4.13 STDINC

### 4.13.1 **BOOL**

<b>Typedef</b>	BOOL
<b>Description</b>	typedef unsigned int BOOL;

### 4.13.2 **FALSE**

<b>Constant</b>	FALSE
<b>Description</b>	<pre>#ifndef FALSE #define FALSE ((BOOL)(0)) #endif</pre>

### 4.13.3 **INT16**

<b>Typedef</b>	INT16
<b>Description</b>	typedef short UINT16;

### 4.13.4 **INT32**

<b>Typedef</b>	INT32
<b>Description</b>	typedef int INT32;

### 4.13.5 **INT40**

<b>Typedef</b>	INT40
<b>Description</b>	typedef long INT40;

### 4.13.6 **INT8**

<b>Typedef</b>	INT8
<b>Description</b>	typedef char INT8;

### 4.13.7 **INV**

<b>Constant</b>	INV
<b>Description</b>	<pre>#define INV ((void*)(-1))</pre>

**4.13.8 NO**

---

<b>Constant</b>	NO
<b>Description</b>	#define NO ((BOOL)(0))

**4.13.9 TRUE**

---

<b>Constant</b>	TRUE
<b>Description</b>	#ifndef TRUE #define TRUE ((BOOL)(1)) #endif

**4.13.10 UINT16**

---

<b>Typedef</b>	UINT16
<b>Description</b>	typedef unsigned short UINT16;

**4.13.11 UINT32**

---

<b>Typedef</b>	UINT32
<b>Description</b>	typedef unsigned int UINT32;

**4.13.12 UINT40**

---

<b>Typedef</b>	UINT40
<b>Description</b>	typedef unsigned long UINT40;

**4.13.13 UINT8**

---

<b>Typedef</b>	UINT8
<b>Description</b>	typedef unsigned char UINT8;

**4.13.14 YES**

---

<b>Constant</b>	YES
<b>Description</b>	#define YES ((BOOL)(1))

## 4.14 TIMER

### 4.14.1 **TIMER\_Close** *Closes a previously opened timer device*

<b>Function</b>	void TIMER_Close( TIMER_HANDLE hTimer );	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See TIMER_Open().
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Closes a previously opened timer device. See TIMER_Open().  The Following Tasks are Performed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The timer event is disabled and cleared</li> <li>• The timer registers are set to their default values</li> </ul>	
<b>Example</b>	TIMER_Close(hTimer);	

### 4.14.2 **TIMER\_CONFIG** *Structure used to setup a timer device*

<b>Structure</b>	TIMER_CONFIG	
<b>Members</b>	UINT32 ctl	Control register value
	UINT32 prd	Period register value
	UINT32 cnt	Count register value
<b>Description</b>	This is the TIMER configuration structure used to set up a timer device. You create and initialize this structure and then pass its address to the TIMER_ConfigA() function. You can use literal values or the <i>TIMER_MK</i> macros to create the structure member values.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_CONFIG MyConfig = {     0x000002C0, /* ctl */     0x00010000, /* prd */     0x00000000 /* cnt */ }; ... TIMER_ConfigA(hTimer, &amp;MyConfig);</pre>	

#### 4.14.3 **TIMER\_ConfigA** *Configure timer using configuration structure*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void TIMER_ConfigA(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer,     TIMER_CONFIG *Config );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See <code>TIMER_Open()</code> .
	Config	
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Sets up the timer device using the configuration structure. The values of the structure are written to the DMA registers. The timer control register (CTL) is written last. See also <code>TIMER_ConfigB()</code> and <code>TIMER_CONFIG</code> .	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_CONFIG MyConfig = {     0x000002C0, /* ctl */     0x00010000, /* prd */     0x00000000 /* cnt */ }; ... TIMER_ConfigA(hTimer, &amp;MyConfig);</pre>	

#### 4.14.4 **TIMER\_ConfigB** *Sets up the timer using the register values passed in*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void TIMER_ConfigB(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer,     UINT32 ctl,     UINT32 prd,     UINT32 cnt );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See <code>TIMER_Open()</code> .
	ctl	Control register value
	prd	Period register value
	cnt	Count register value
<b>Return Value</b>	none	

<b>Description</b>	Sets up the timer using the register values passed in. The register values are written to the timer registers. The timer control register ( <i>ctl</i> ) is written last. See also <code>TIMER_ConfigA()</code> .  You may use literal values for the arguments or for readability. You may use the <code>TIMER_MK</code> macros to create the register values based on field values.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_ConfigB (LTimer, 0x000002C0, 0x00010000, 0x00000000);</pre>

#### 4.14.5 **TIMER\_DEVICE\_CNT** *A compile time constant; number of timer devices present.*

<b>Constant</b>	<code>TIMER_DEVICE_CNT</code>
<b>Description</b>	Compile time constant; number of timer devices present.

#### 4.14.6 **TIMER\_GetCount** *Returns the current timer count value*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>UINT32 TIMER_GetCount(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>hTimer</code>	Device handle. See <code>TIMER_Open()</code> .
<b>Return Value</b>	Count Value	
<b>Description</b>	Returns the current timer count value.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>cnt = TIMER_GetCount(hTimer);</pre>	

#### 4.14.7 **TIMER\_GetDatin** *Reads the value of the TINP pin*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>int TIMER_GetDatin(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	<code>hTimer</code>	Device handle. See <code>TIMER_Open()</code> .
<b>Return Value</b>	<code>DATIN</code>	Returns DATIN, value on TINP pin; 0 or 1
<b>Description</b>	This function reads the value of the TINP pin.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>tinp = TIMER_GetDatin();</pre>	

**4.14.8** **TIMER\_GetEventId** *Obtains the event ID for the timer device*

---

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 TIMER_GetEventId( TIMER_HANDLE hTimer );	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See TIMER_Open( ).
<b>Return Value</b>	Event ID	IRQ Event ID for the timer device
<b>Description</b>	Use this function to obtain the event ID for the timer device.	
<b>Example</b>	TimerEventId = TIMER_GetEventId(hTimer); IRQ_Enable(TimerEventId);	

**4.14.9** **TIMER\_GetPeriod** *Returns the period of the timer device*

---

<b>Function</b>	UINT32 TIMER_GetPeriod( TIMER_HANDLE hTimer );	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See TIMER_Open( ).
<b>Return Value</b>	Period Value	Timer period
<b>Description</b>	Returns the period of the timer device.	
<b>Example</b>	p = TIMER_GetPeriod(hTimer);	

**4.14.10** **TIMER\_GetTstat** *Reads the timer status; value of timer output*

---

<b>Function</b>	int TIMER_GetTstat( TIMER_HANDLE hTimer );	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See TIMER_Open( ).
<b>Return Value</b>	TSTAT	Timer status; 0 or 1
<b>Description</b>	Reads the timer status; value of timer output.	
<b>Example</b>	status = TIMER_GetTstat(hTimer);	

4.14.11 **TIMER\_MK\_CTL***Makes a value suitable for the timer control register*

<b>Macro</b>	<pre> TIMER_MK_CTL(     func,     invout,     datout,     pwid,     go,     hld,     cp,     clksrc,     invinp ) </pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	func	Function of TOUT pin: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_FUNC_GPIO</code></li> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_FUNC_TOUT</code></li> </ul>
	invout	TOUT inverter control: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_INVOUT_NO</code></li> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_INVOUT_YES</code></li> </ul>
	datout	Data output: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_DATOUT_0</code></li> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_DATOUT_1</code></li> </ul>
	pwid	Pulse width: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_PWID_ONE</code></li> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_PWID_TWO</code></li> </ul>
	go	GO bit: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_GO_NO</code></li> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_GO_YES</code></li> </ul>
	hld	Hold: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_HLD_YES</code></li> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_HLD_NO</code></li> </ul>
	cp	Clock/Pulse mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_CP_PULSE</code></li> <li>• <code>TIMER_CTL_CP_CLOCK</code></li> </ul>

	<div> <div>clksrc</div> <div>Timer input clock source:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TIMER_CTL_CLKSRC_EXTERNAL</li> <li>TIMER_CTL_CLKSRC_CPUOVR4</li> </ul> </div>
	<div> <div>invinp</div> <div>TINP inverter control:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TIMER_CTL_INVINP_NO</li> <li>TIMER_CTL_INVINP_YES</li> </ul> </div>
<b>Return Value</b>	CTL Value
<b>Description</b>	<p>Constructed register value</p> <p>Use this macro to make a value suitable for the timer control register.</p> <p>The power-on default value is <code>TIMER_CTL_DEFAULT</code>.</p> <p>Use of the <i>TIMER_MK</i> macros makes it easier to construct register values based on field values. You have a choice of using integer constants, integer variables, or the symbolic constants for arguments. All field values are right justified.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide</i> (literature number SPRU190) for descriptions of the arguments.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> UINT32 Ctl;  /* you can do this / Ctl = TIMER_MK_CTL(0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0);  / or to be more readable, you can do this */ Ctl = TIMER_MK_CTL(     TIMER_CTL_FUNC_GPIO,     TIMER_CTL_INVOUT_NO,     TIMER_CTL_DATOUT_0,     TIMER_CTL_PWID_ONE,     TIMER_CTL_GO_NO,     TIMER_CTL_HLD_YES,     TIMER_CTL_CP_PULSE,     TIMER_CTL_CLKSRC_EXTERNAL,     TIMER_CTL_INVINP_NO ); </pre>



#### 4.14.12 **TIMER\_Open** *Opens a TIMER device for use*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>TIMER_HANDLE TIMER_Open(     int DevNum,     UINT32 Flags );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	DevNum	Device Number: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TIMER_DEVANY</li> <li>• TIMER_DEV0</li> <li>• TIMER_DEV1</li> </ul>
	Flags	Open flags, logical OR of any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TIMER_OPEN_RESET</li> </ul>
<b>Return Value</b>	Device Handle	Device handle
<b>Description</b>	<p>Before a TIMER device can be used, it must first be opened by this function. Once opened, it cannot be opened again until closed. See <code>TIMER_Close()</code>. The return value is a unique device handle that is used in subsequent TIMER API calls. If the open fails, <code>INV</code> is returned.</p> <p>If the <code>TIMER_OPEN_RESET</code> is specified, the timer device registers are set to their power-on defaults and any associated interrupts are disabled and cleared.</p>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_HANDLE hTimer; ... hTimer = TIMER_Open(TIMER_DEV0, 0);</pre>	

#### 4.14.13 **TIMER\_Pause** *Pauses the timer*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void TIMER_Pause(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See <code>TIMER_Open()</code> .
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Pauses the timer. May be restarted using <code>TIMER_Resume()</code> .	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_Pause(hTimer); ... TIMER_Resume(hTimer);</pre>	

**4.14.14** **TIMER\_Reset** *Resets the timer device*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void TIMER_Reset(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See TIMER_Open( ).
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Resets the timer device. Disables and clears the interrupt event and sets the timer registers to default values. If INV is specified, all timer devices are reset.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_Reset(hTimer); TIMER_Reset(INV);</pre>	

**4.14.15** **TIMER\_Resume** *Resumes the timer after a pause*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void TIMER_Resume(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See TIMER_Open( ).
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Resumes the timer after a pause. See TIMER_Pause( ).	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_Pause(hTimer); ... TIMER_Resume(hTimer);</pre>	

**4.14.16** **TIMER\_SetCount** *Sets the count value of the timer*

---

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void TIMER_SetCount(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer,     UINT32 Count );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See TIMER_Open( ).
	Count	Count value
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Sets the count value of the timer. The timer is not paused during the update.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_SetCount(hTimer, 0x00000000);</pre>	

#### 4.14.17 **TIMER\_SetDataout** *Sets the data output value*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void TIMER_SetDatout(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer,     int Val );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See <code>TIMER_Open()</code> .
	Val	0 or 1
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Sets the data output value.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_SetDatout(hTimer, 0);</pre>	

#### 4.14.18 **TIMER\_SetPeriod** *Sets the timer period*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void TIMER_SetPeriod(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer,     UINT32 Period );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See <code>TIMER_Open()</code> .
	Period	Period value
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Sets the timer period. The timer is not paused during the update.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_SetPeriod(hTimer, 0x00010000);</pre>	

#### 4.14.19 **TIMER\_Start** *Starts the timer device running*

<b>Function</b>	<pre>void TIMER_Start(     TIMER_HANDLE hTimer );</pre>	
<b>Arguments</b>	hTimer	Device handle. See <code>TIMER_Open()</code> .
<b>Return Value</b>	none	
<b>Description</b>	Starts the timer device running. HLD is released and GO is set.	
<b>Example</b>	<pre>TIMER_Start(hTimer);</pre>	

**4.14.20** **TIMER\_SUPPORT**

*A compile time constant whose value is 1 if the device supports the **TIMER** module*

---

**Constant**      `TIMER_SUPPORT`

**Description**      Compile time constant that has a value of 1 if the device supports the **TIMER** module and 0 otherwise. You are not required to use this constant.

**Example**      Currently, all devices support this module.

```
#if (TIMER_SUPPORT)
    /* user TIMER configuration */
#endif
```

# HAL Reference

This chapter contains an alphabetical reference of the chip support library hardware abstraction layer (CSL HAL). The HAL underlies the service layer and provides it a set of macros and constants for manipulating the peripheral registers at the lowest level.

When using the service layer APIs, it is not advisable to interface directly into the HAL because this could have an adverse effect on the service layer functionality. However, if you decide not to use the service layer, the HAL is available for exclusive use. It is a good idea to have the *TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide* (literature number SPRU190) readily available when viewing the HAL reference.

Topic	Page
5.1 HAL Reference Introduction .....	5-2
5.2 HCACHE .....	5-4
5.3 HCHIP .....	5-7
5.4 HDMA .....	5-14
5.5 HEDMA .....	5-17
5.6 HEMIF .....	5-30
5.7 HHPI .....	5-32
5.8 HIRQ .....	5-33
5.9 HMCBSP .....	5-34
5.10 HPWR .....	5-41
5.11 HTIMER .....	5-42

## 5.1 HAL Reference Introduction

The HAL offers a consistent orthogonal set of constants and macros used for manipulating peripheral registers symbolically. For every register and every field of every register, there are access identifiers as shown below.

### Memory Mapped Register Constants

- `HPER_REG_ADDR`

### Memory Mapped Register Macros

- `HPER_REG`
- `HPER_REG_GET(RegAddr)`
- `HPER_REG_SET(RegAddr, Val)`
- `HPER_REG_CFG(RegAddr, Field Val0, Field Val1, ...)`

### Memory Mapped Register Field Constants

- `HPER_REG_FIELD_MASK`
- `HPER_REG_FIELD_SHIFT`

### Memory Mapped Register Field Macros

- `HPER_REG_FIELD_GET(RegAddr)`
- `HPER_REG_FIELD_SET(RegAddr, Val)`

HPER – peripheral module name preceded by H, i.e. HDMA.

REG – peripheral register name, i.e. PRICTL

FIELD – peripheral register field name, i.e. ESIZE

HPER\_REG\_ADDR – constant 32-bit address of the register

HPER\_REG – L-value symbol for the register that may be used in expressions, defined as `(*(volatile unsigned int*)HPER_REG_ADDR)`

HPER\_REG\_GET() – reads the register

HPER\_REG\_SET() – sets the register to a given value

HPER\_REG\_CFG() – sets the register given individual field values

HPER\_REG\_FIELD\_MASK – is a bit-mask defining the field within the register

HPER\_REG\_FIELD\_SHIFT – bit position of the field within the register

**HPER\_REG\_FIELD\_GET()** – extracts the field from the register then right justifies it

**HPER\_REG\_FIELD\_SET()** – sets the field of the register to the given right justified value

**Example Usage:**

- `HDMA_PRCTL = 0x1234567;`
- `HDMA_PRCTL_RSYNC_SET(HDMA_PRCTL0_ADDR, 12);`
- `X = HDMA_PRCTL_RSYNC_GET(HDMA_PRCTL0_ADDR);`
- `X = HDMA_PRCTL_GET(HDMA_PRCTL0_ADDR);`
- `HDMA_PRCTL_SET(HDMA_PRCTL0_ADDR, 0x12345678);`
- `HDMA_PRCTL_CFG(HDMA_PRCTL0_ADDR,  
0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0,  
);`

In the reference that follows, only the symbolic identifiers for the registers and fields are given. The macros and constants may be assumed as follows:

- `HPER_REG_ADDR` - always exists
- `HPER_REG` - always exists
- `HPER_REG_GET` - exists if register is readable
- `HPER_REG_SET` - exists if register is write-able
- `HPER_REG_CFG` - exists if register is write-able, only write-able fields are parameters to this macro
- `HPER_REG_FIELD_MASK` - always exists
- `HPER_REG_FIELD_SHIFT` - always exists
- `HPER_REG_FIELD_GET` - exists if field is readable
- `HPER_REG_FIELD_SET` - exists if field is write-able

The service layer source code uses the HAL extensively to perform its tasks. One of the things the HAL does for the service layer is abstracts certain differences of registers between different devices. For example, if a field becomes larger in a future device, the MASK/SHIFT macros will be adjusted accordingly and hence, the GET/SET macros still work. It is a good idea to have the *TMS320C6000 Peripherals Reference Guide* handy when viewing the HAL reference.

## 5.2 HCACHE

### 5.2.1 **HCACHE\_CCFG** *cache configuration register*

(RW) HCACHE_CCFG*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_CCFG_L2MODE	L2 operation mode
	(RW) HCACHE_CCFG_ID	invalidate L1D
	(RW) HCACHE_CCFG_IP	invalidate L1P
	(RW) HCACHE_CCFG_P	L2 requestor priority
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		

### 5.2.2 **HCACHE\_L2FBAR** *L2 cache flush base address register*

(RW) HCACHE_L2FBAR*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_L2FBAR_L2FBAR	L2 flush base address
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		

### 5.2.3 **HCACHE\_L2FWC** *L2 cache flush word count register*

(RW) HCACHE_L2FWC*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_L2FWC_L2FWC	L2 flush word count
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		

### 5.2.4 **HCACHE\_L2CBAR** *L2 cache clean base address register*

(RW) HCACHE_L2CBAR*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_L2CBAR_L2CBAR	L2 clean base address
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		

### 5.2.5 **HCACHE\_L2CWC** *L2 cache clean word count*

(RW) HCACHE_L2CWC*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_L2CWC_L2CWC	L2 clean word count
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		



### 5.2.6 **HCACHE\_L1PFBAR** *L1 program cache flush base address register*

(RW) HCACHE_L1PFBAR*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_L1PFBAR_L1PFBAR	L1P flush base address
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		

### 5.2.7 **HCACHE\_L1PFWC** *L1 program cache flush word count register*

(RW) HCACHE_L1PFWC*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_L1PFWC_L1PFWC	L1P flush word count
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		

### 5.2.8 **HCACHE\_L1DFBAR** *L1 data cache flush base register*

(RW) HCACHE_L1DFBAR*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_L1DFBAR_L1DFBAR	L1D flush base address
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		

### 5.2.9 **HCACHE\_L1DFWC** *L1 data flush word count register*

(RW) HCACHE_L1DFWC*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_L1DFWC_L1DFWC	L1D flush word count
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		

### 5.2.10 **HCACHE\_L2FLUSH** *L2 cache flush all register*

(RW) HCACHE_L2FLUSH*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_L2FLUSH_F	flush L2
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		

### 5.2.11 **HCACHE\_L2CLEAN** *L2 cache clean all register*

(RW) HCACHE_L2CLEAN*		
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_L2CLEAN_C	clean L2
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache		

## 5.2.12 HCACHE\_MAR

*Memory attribute registers 0–15*

(RW) HCACHE_MAR0*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR1*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR2*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR3*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR4*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR5*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR6*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR7*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR8*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR9*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR10*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR11*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR12*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR13*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR14*	
(RW) HCACHE_MAR15*	
Fields	(RW) HCACHE_MAR_CE      cacheability enable
*Only supported on devices with L2 cache	

## 5.3 HCHIP

### 5.3.1 HCHIP\_NULL *NULL register*

(RW) HCHIP_NULL	
Fields	none
When a register exists on one device but not on another, the NULL register is used on the non-supporting device. This allows the HAL to still implement the GET/SET macros.	

### 5.3.2 HCHIP\_CSR *Control status register*

(RW) HCHIP_CSR		
(RW) CSR		
Fields	(RW) HCHIP_CSR_GIE	global interrupt enable
	(RW) HCHIP_CSR_PGIE	previous GIE
	(RW) HCHIP_CSR_DCC	data cache control
	(RW) HCHIP_CSR_PCC	program cache control
	(R) HCHIP_CSR_EN	endian
	(RC) HCHIP_CSR_SAT	saturate bit
	(RW) HCHIP_CSR_PWRD	control power down modes
	(R) HCHIP_CSR_REVID	revision ID
	(R) HCHIP_CSR_CPUID	CPU ID

### 5.3.3 HCHIP\_IFR *Interrupt flag register*

(R) HCHIP_IFR (R) IFR		
Fields	(R) HCHIP_IFR_NMIF	non-maskable interrupt flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF4	interrupt 4 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF5	interrupt 5 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF6	interrupt 6 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF7	interrupt 7 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF8	interrupt 8 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF9	interrupt 9 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF10	interrupt 10 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF11	interrupt 11 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF12	interrupt 12 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF13	interrupt 13 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF14	interrupt 14 flag
	(R) HCHIP_IFR_IF15	interrupt 15 flag

### 5.3.4 HCHIP\_ISR *Interrupt set register*

(W) HCHIP_ISR (W) ISR		
Fields	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS4	interrupt 4 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS5	interrupt 5 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS6	interrupt 6 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS7	interrupt 7 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS8	interrupt 8 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS9	interrupt 9 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS10	interrupt 10 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS11	interrupt 11 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS12	interrupt 12 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS13	interrupt 13 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS14	interrupt 14 set
	(W) HCHIP_ISR_IS15	interrupt 15 set

### 5.3.5 HCHIP\_ICR *Interrupt clear register*

(W) HCHIP_ICR (W) ICR		
Fields	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC4	interrupt 4 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC5	interrupt 5 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC6	interrupt 6 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC7	interrupt 7 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC8	interrupt 8 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC9	interrupt 9 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC10	interrupt 10 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC11	interrupt 11 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC12	interrupt 12 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC13	interrupt 13 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC14	interrupt 14 clear
	(W) HCHIP_ICR_IC15	interrupt 15 clear

### 5.3.6 HCHIP\_IER *Interrupt enable register*

(RW) HCHIP_IER (RW) IER		
Fields	(RW) HCHIP_IER_NMIF	non-maskable interrupt enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE4	interrupt 4 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE5	interrupt 5 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE6	interrupt 6 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE7	interrupt 7 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE8	interrupt 8 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE9	interrupt 9 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE10	interrupt 10 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE11	interrupt 11 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE12	interrupt 12 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE13	interrupt 13 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE14	interrupt 14 enable
	(RW) HCHIP_IER_IE15	interrupt 15 enable

### 5.3.7 HCHIP\_ISTP *Interrupt service table pointer register*

(RW) HCHIP_ISTP (RW) ISTP		
Fields	(R) HCHIP_ISTP_HPEINT	highest priority enabled interrupt
	(RW) HCHIP_ISTP_ISTB	interrupt service table base address

### 5.3.8 HCHIP\_IRP *Interrupt return pointer register*

(RW) HCHIP_IRP (RW) IRP		
Fields	(RW) HCHIP_IRP_IRP	interrupt return pointer

### 5.3.9 HCHIP\_NRP *Non-maskable interrupt return pointer register*

(RW) HCHIP_NRP (RW) NRP		
Fields	(RW) HCHIP_NRP_NRP	non-maskable interrupt return pointer

### 5.3.10 HCHIP\_AMR *Addressing mode register*

(RW) HCHIP_AMR (RW) AMR		
Fields	(RW) HCHIP_AMR_A4MODE	A4 mode
	(RW) HCHIP_AMR_A5MODE	A5 mode
	(RW) HCHIP_AMR_A6MODE	A6 mode
	(RW) HCHIP_AMR_A7MODE	A7 mode
	(RW) HCHIP_AMR_B4MODE	B4 mode
	(RW) HCHIP_AMR_B5MODE	B5 mode
	(RW) HCHIP_AMR_B6MODE	B6 mode
	(RW) HCHIP_AMR_B7MODE	B7 mode
	(RW) HCHIP_AMR_BK0	BK0 block size
	(RW) HCHIP_AMR_BK1	BK1 block size

**5.3.11 HCHIP\_FADCR***Floating-point adder configuration register*

(RW) HCHIP_FADCR*		
(RW) FADCR*		
Fields	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L1NAN1	NAN1.L1
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L1NAN2	NAN2.L1
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L1DEN1	DEN1.L1
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L1DEN2	DEN2.L1
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L1INVAL	INVAL.L1
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L1INFO	INFO.L1
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L1OVER	OVER.L1
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L1INEX	INEX.L1
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L1UNDER	UNDER.L1
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L1RMODE	Rmode.L1
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L2NAN1	NAN1.L2
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L2NAN2	NAN2.L2
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L2DEN1	DEN1.L2
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L2DEN2	DEN2.L2
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L2INVAL	INVAL.L2
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L2INFO	INFO.L2
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L2OVER	OVER.L2
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L2INEX	INEX.L2
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L2UNDER	UNDER.L2
	(RW) HCHIP_FADCR_L2RMODE	Rmode.L2
* only supported on devices with floating-point unit		

**5.3.12 HCHIP\_FAUCR***Floating-point auxiliary configuration register*

(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR*		
(RW) FAUCR*		
Fields	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1NAN1	NAN1.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1NAN2	NAN2.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1DEN1	DEN1.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1DEN2	DEN2.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1INVAL	INVAL.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1INFO	INFO.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1OVER	OVER.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1INEX	INEX.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1UNDER	UNDER.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1UNORD	UNORD.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S1DIV0	DIV0.S1
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2NAN1	NAN1.S2
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2NAN2	NAN2.S2
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2DEN1	DEN1.S2
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2DEN2	DEN2.S2
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2INVAL	INVAL.S2
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2INFO	INFO.S2
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2OVER	OVER.S2
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2INEX	INEX.S2
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2UNDER	UNDER.S2
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2UNORD	UNORD.S2
	(RW) HCHIP_FAUCR_S2DIV0	DIV0.S2
* only supported on devices with floating-point unit		



**5.3.13 HCHIP\_FPCR***Floating-point multiplier configuration register*

(RW) HCHIP_FPCR*		
(RW) FPCR*		
Fields	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M1NAN1	NAN1.M1
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M1NAN2	NAN2.M1
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M1DEN1	DEN1.M1
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M1DEN2	DEN2.M1
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M1INVAL	INVAL.M1
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M1INFO	INFO.M1
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M1OVER	OVER.M1
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M1INEX	INEX.M1
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M1UNDER	UNDER.M1
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M1RMODE	Rmode.M1
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M2NAN1	NAN1.M2
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M2NAN2	NAN2.M2
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M2DEN1	DEN1.M2
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M2DEN2	DEN2.M2
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M2INVAL	INVAL.M2
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M2INFO	INFO.M2
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M2OVER	OVER.M2
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M2INEX	INEX.M2
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M2UNDER	UNDER.M2
	(RW) HCHIP_FPCR_M2RMODE	Rmode.M2
* only supported on devices with floating-point unit		

## 5.4 HDMA

### 5.4.1 HDMA\_AUXCTL *DMA auxiliary control register*

(RW) HDMA_AUXCTL*		
Fields	(RW) HDMA_AUXCTL_CHPRI	DMA channel priority
	(RW) HDMA_AUXCTL_AUXPRI	auxiliary channel priority mode
* only supported on devices with DMA		

### 5.4.2 HDMA\_PRCTL *DMA primary control register*

(RW) HDMA_PRCTL0*		
(RW) HDMA_PRCTL1*		
(RW) HDMA_PRCTL2*		
(RW) HDMA_PRCTL3*		
Fields	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_START	start
	(R) HDMA_PRCTL_STATUS	status
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_SRC DIR	source address modification
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_DST DIR	destination address modification
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_ESIZE	element size
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_SPLIT	split channel mode
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_CNTRL D	transfer count reload
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_INDEX	global data register for programmable index
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_RS YNC	read transfer synchronization
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_WS YNC	write transfer synchronization
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_PRI	priority mode
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_TCINT	transfer controller interrupt
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_FS	frame synchronization
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_EMOD	emulation mode
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_SRCRL D	source address reload
	(RW) HDMA_PRCTL_DSTRL D	destination address reload
* only supported on devices with DMA		

### 5.4.3 HDMA\_SECCTL *DMA secondary control register*

(RW) HDMA_SECCTL0* (RW) HDMA_SECCTL1* (RW) HDMA_SECCTL2* (RW) HDMA_SECCTL3*		
Fields	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_SXCOND	split transfer overrun receive condition
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_SXIE	split transfer overrun receive interrupt enable
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_FRAMECOND	frame complete condition
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_FRAMEIE	frame complete interrupt enable
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_LASTCOND	last frame condition
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_LASTIE	last frame interrupt enable
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_BLOCKCOND	block transfer complete condition
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_BLOCKIE	block transfer complete interrupt enable
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_RDROPCOND	dropped read synchronization condition
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_RDROPIE	dropped read synchronization interrupt enable
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_WDROPCOND	dropped write synchronization condition
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_WDROPIE	dropped write synchronization interrupt enable
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_RSYNCSTAT	read synchronization status
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_RSYNCCLR	read synchronization status clear
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_WSYNCSTAT	write synchronization status
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_WSYNCCLR	write synchronization status clear
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_DMACEN	DMAC pin control
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_FSIG	frame sync ignore
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_RSPOL	read sync polarity
	(RW) HDMA_SECCTL_WSPOL	write sync polarity
* only supported on devices with DMA		

### 5.4.4 HDMA\_SRC *DMA source address register*

(RW) HDMA_SRC0* (RW) HDMA_SRC1* (RW) HDMA_SRC2* (RW) HDMA_SRC3*		
Fields	(RW) HDMA_SRC_SRC	source address
* only supported on devices with DMA		

#### 5.4.5 HDMA\_DST *DMA destination address register*

(RW) HDMA_DST0*		
(RW) HDMA_DST1*		
(RW) HDMA_DST2*		
(RW) HDMA_DST3*		
Fields	(RW) HDMA_DST_DST	destination address
* only supported on devices with DMA		

#### 5.4.6 HDMA\_XFRCNT *DMA transfer count register*

(RW) HDMA_XFRCNT0*		
(RW) HDMA_XFRCNT1*		
(RW) HDMA_XFRCNT2*		
(RW) HDMA_XFRCNT3*		
Fields	(RW) HDMA_XFRCNT_ELECNT	element count
Fields	(RW) HDMA_XFRCNT_FRMCNT	frame count
* only supported on devices with DMA		

#### 5.4.7 HDMA\_GBLCNT *DMA global count reload register*

(RW) HDMA_GBLCNTA*		
(RW) HDMA_GBLCNTB*		
Fields	(RW) HDMA_GBLCNT_ELECNT	element count reload
Fields	(RW) HDMA_GBLCNT_FRMCNT	frame count reload
* only supported on devices with DMA		

#### 5.4.8 HDMA\_GBLADDR *DMA global address register*

(RW) HDMA_GBLADDRA*		
(RW) HDMA_GBLADDRB*		
(RW) HDMA_GBLADDRC*		
(RW) HDMA_GBLADDRD*		
Fields	(RW) HDMA_GBLIDX_ELEIDX	element index
Fields	(RW) HDMA_GBLIDX_FRMIDX	frame index
* only supported on devices with DMA		

#### 5.4.9 HDMA\_GBLIDX *DMA global index register*

(RW) HDMA_GBLIDXA*		
(RW) HDMA_GBLIDXB*		
Fields	(RW) HDMA_GBLADDR_GBLADDR	address
* only supported on devices with DMA		

## 5.5 HEDMA

### 5.5.1 HEDMA\_OPT

*quick EDMA options register*  
*quick EDMA options pseudo register*  
*EDMA channel 0 options*  
*EDMA channel 1 options*  
*EDMA channel 2 options*  
*EDMA channel 3 options*  
*EDMA channel 4 options*  
*EDMA channel 5 options*  
*EDMA channel 6 options*  
*EDMA channel 7 options*  
*EDMA channel 8 options*  
*EDMA channel 9 options*  
*EDMA channel 10 options*  
*EDMA channel 11 options*  
*EDMA channel 12 options*  
*EDMA channel 13 options*  
*EDMA channel 14 options*  
*EDMA channel 15 options*  
*EDMA options in parameter RAM*

	(W) HEDMA_QOPT*	
	(W) HEDMA_QSOPT*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT0*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT1*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT2*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT3*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT4*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT5*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT6*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT7*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT8*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT9*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT10*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT11*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT12*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT13*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT14*	
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT15*	
	(RW) PRAM*+	
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_OPT_FS	frame synchronization
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT_LINK++	linking events
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT_TCC	transfer complete code
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT_TCINT	transfer complete interrupt
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT_DUM	destination update mode
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT_2DD	2-dimensional destination
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT_SUM	source update mode

*Table Continued*

	(RW) HEDMA_OPT_2DS	2-dimensional source
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT_ESIZE	element size
	(RW) HEDMA_OPT_PRI	priority level
* only supported on devices with EDMA		
+ all of the macros apply for the options member of a PRAM table for both read and write		
++ this field ignored for quick DMA registers		

### 5.5.2 HEDMA\_SRC

*quick EDMA source address register*  
*quick EDMA source address pseudo register*  
*EDMA channel 0 source address*  
*EDMA channel 1 source address*  
*EDMA channel 2 source address*  
*EDMA channel 3 source address*  
*EDMA channel 4 source address*  
*EDMA channel 5 source address*  
*EDMA channel 6 source address*  
*EDMA channel 7 source address*  
*EDMA channel 8 source address*  
*EDMA channel 9 source address*  
*EDMA channel 10 source address*  
*EDMA channel 11 source address*  
*EDMA channel 12 source address*  
*EDMA channel 13 source address*  
*EDMA channel 14 source address*  
*EDMA channel 15 source address*  
*EDMA source address in parameter RAM*

(W) HEDMA_QSRC*	
(W) HEDMA_QSSRC*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC0*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC1*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC2*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC3*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC4*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC5*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC6*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC7*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC8*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC9*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC10*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC11*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC12*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC13*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC14*	
(RW) HEDMA_SRC15*	
(RW) PRAM*+	
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_SRC_SRC      source address
* only supported on devices with EDMA	
+ all of the macros apply for the options member of a PRAM table for both read and write	

### 5.5.3 HEDMA\_CNT

quick EDMA transfer count register  
 quick EDMA transfer count pseudo register  
 EDMA channel 0 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 1 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 2 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 3 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 4 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 5 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 6 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 7 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 8 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 9 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 10 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 11 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 12 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 13 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 14 transfer count  
 EDMA channel 15 transfer count  
 EDMA transfer count in parameter RAM

(W) HEDMA_QCNT*		
(W) HEDMA_QSCNT*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT0*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT1*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT2*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT3*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT4*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT5*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT6*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT7*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT8*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT9*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT10*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT11*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT12*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT13*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT14*		
(RW) HEDMA_CNT15*		
(RW) PRAM**		
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_CNT_ELECNT	element count
	(RW) HEDMA_CNT_FRMCNT	frame count
* only supported on devices with EDMA		
+ all of the macros apply for the options member of a PRAM table for both read and write		



### 5.5.4 HEDMA\_DST

*quick EDMA destination address register*  
*quick EDMA destination address pseudo register*  
 EDMA channel 0 destination address  
 EDMA channel 1 destination address  
 EDMA channel 2 destination address  
 EDMA channel 3 destination address  
 EDMA channel 4 destination address  
 EDMA channel 5 destination address  
 EDMA channel 6 destination address  
 EDMA channel 7 destination address  
 EDMA channel 8 destination address  
 EDMA channel 9 destination address  
 EDMA channel 10 destination address  
 EDMA channel 11 destination address  
 EDMA channel 12 destination address  
 EDMA channel 13 destination address  
 EDMA channel 14 destination address  
 EDMA channel 15 destination address  
 EDMA destination address in parameter RAM

(W) HEDMA_QDST*	
(W) HEDMA_QSDST*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST0*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST1*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST2*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST3*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST4*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST5*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST6*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST7*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST8*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST9*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST10*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST11*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST12*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST13*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST14*	
(RW) HEDMA_DST15*	
(RW) PRAM*+	
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_DST_DST destination address
* only supported on devices with EDMA	
+ all of the macros apply for the options member of a PRAM table for both read and write	

### 5.5.5 HEDMA\_IDX

quick EDMA index register  
 quick EDMA index pseudo register  
 EDMA channel 0 index  
 EDMA channel 1 index  
 EDMA channel 2 index  
 EDMA channel 3 index  
 EDMA channel 4 index  
 EDMA channel 5 index  
 EDMA channel 6 index  
 EDMA channel 7 index  
 EDMA channel 8 index  
 EDMA channel 9 index  
 EDMA channel 10 index  
 EDMA channel 11 index  
 EDMA channel 12 index  
 EDMA channel 13 index  
 EDMA channel 14 index  
 EDMA channel 15 index  
 EDMA index in parameter RAM

(W)	HEDMA_QIDX*	
(W)	HEDMA_QSIDX*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX0*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX1*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX2*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX3*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX4*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX5*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX6*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX7*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX8*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX9*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX10*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX11*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX12*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX13*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX14*	
(RW)	HEDMA_IDX15*	
(RW)	PRAM*+	
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_IDX_ELEIDX	element index
	(RW) HEDMA_IDX_FRMIDX	frame index
* only supported on devices with EDMA		
+ all of the macros apply for the options member of a PRAM table for both read and write		

### 5.5.6 HEDMA\_RLD

EDMA channel 0 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 1 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 2 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 3 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 4 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 5 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 6 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 7 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 8 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 9 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 10 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 11 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 12 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 13 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 14 element reload & link  
 EDMA channel 15 element reload & link  
 EDMA element reload & link in parameter RAM

(RW) HEDMA_RLD0*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD1*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD2*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD3*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD4*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD5*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD6*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD7*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD8*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD9*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD10*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD11*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD12*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD13*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD14*	
(RW) HEDMA_RLD15*	
(RW) PRAM*+	

Fields	(RW) HEDMA_RLD_LINK	link address
	(RW) HEDMA_RLD_ELERLD	element count reload

\* only supported on devices with EDMA

+ all of the macros apply for the options member of a PRAM table for both read and write

### 5.5.7 HEDMA\_PQSR

Priority queue status register

(R) HEDMA_PQSR*		
Fields	(R) HEDMA_PQSR_PQ0	priority queue 0 status
	(R) HEDMA_PQSR_PQ1	priority queue 1 status
	(R) HEDMA_PQSR_PQ2	priority queue 2 status
* only supported on devices with EDMA		

**5.5.8 HEDMA\_CIPR** *Channel interrupt pending register*

(RW) HEDMA_CIPR*		
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP0	interrupt 0 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP1	interrupt 1 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP2	interrupt 2 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP3	interrupt 3 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP4	interrupt 4 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP5	interrupt 5 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP6	interrupt 6 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP7	interrupt 7 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP8	interrupt 8 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP9	interrupt 9 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP10	interrupt 10 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP11	interrupt 11 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP12	interrupt 12 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP13	interrupt 13 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP14	interrupt 14 pending
	(RW) HEDMA_CIPR_CIP15	interrupt 15 pending
* only supported on devices with EDMA		

### 5.5.9 HEDMA\_CIER *Channel interrupt enable register*

(RW) HEDMA_CIER*		
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE0	interrupt 0 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE1	interrupt 1 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE2	interrupt 2 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE3	interrupt 3 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE4	interrupt 4 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE5	interrupt 5 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE6	interrupt 6 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE7	interrupt 7 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE8	interrupt 8 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE9	interrupt 9 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE10	interrupt 10 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE11	interrupt 11 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE12	interrupt 12 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE13	interrupt 13 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE14	interrupt 14 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_CIER_CIE15	interrupt 15 enable
* only supported on devices with EDMA		

### 5.5.10 HEDMA\_CCER *Channel chain enable register*

(RW) HEDMA_CCER*		
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_CCER_CCE8	channel chain enable 8
	(RW) HEDMA_CCER_CCE9	channel chain enable 9
	(RW) HEDMA_CCER_CCE10	channel chain enable 10
	(RW) HEDMA_CCER_CCE11	channel chain enable 11
* only supported on devices with EDMA		

**5.5.11 HEDMA\_ER** *EDMA event flag register*

(R) HEDMA_ER*		
Fields	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT0	event 0 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT1	event 1 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT2	event 2 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT3	event 3 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT4	event 4 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT5	event 5 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT6	event 6 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT7	event 7 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT8	event 8 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT9	event 9 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT10	event 10 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT11	event 11 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT12	event 12 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT13	event 13 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT14	event 14 flag
	(R) HEDMA_ER_EVT15	event 15 flag
* only supported on devices with EDMA		

**5.5.12 HEDMA\_EER***EDMA event enable register*

(RW) HEDMA_EER*		
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE0	event 0 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE1	event 1 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE2	event 2 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE3	event 3 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE4	event 4 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE5	event 5 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE6	event 6 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE7	event 7 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE8	event 8 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE9	event 9 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE10	event 10 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE11	event 11 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE12	event 12 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE13	event 13 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE14	event 14 enable
	(RW) HEDMA_EER_EE15	event 15 enable
* only supported on devices with EDMA		

### 5.5.13 HEDMA\_ECR *EDMA event clear register*

(RW) HEDMA_ECR*		
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC0	event 0 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC1	event 1 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC2	event 2 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC3	event 3 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC4	event 4 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC5	event 5 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC6	event 6 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC7	event 7 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC8	event 8 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC9	event 9 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC10	event 10 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC11	event 11 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC12	event 12 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC13	event 13 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC14	event 14 clear
	(RW) HEDMA_ECR_EC15	event 15 clear
* only supported on devices with EDMA		



**5.5.14 HEDMA\_ESR** *EDMA event set register*

(RW) HEDMA_ESR*		
Fields	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES0	event 0 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES1	event 1 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES2	event 2 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES3	event 3 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES4	event 4 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES5	event 5 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES6	event 6 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES7	event 7 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES8	event 8 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES9	event 9 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES10	event 10 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES11	event 11 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES12	event 12 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES13	event 13 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES14	event 14 set
	(RW) HEDMA_ESR_ES15	event 15 set
* only supported on devices with EDMA		

## 5.6 HEMIF

### 5.6.1 HEMIF\_GBLCTL *global control register*

(RW) HEMIF_GBLCTL		
Fields	(R) HEMIF_GBLCTL_MAP	map mode
	(RW) HEMIF_GBLCTL_RBTR8	requester arbitration mode
	(RW) HEMIF_GBLCTL_SSCRT	SBSRAM clock rate select
	(RW) HEMIF_GBLCTL_CLK2EN	CLKOUT2 enable
	(RW) HEMIF_GBLCTL_CLK1EN	CLKOUT1 enable
	(RW) HEMIF_GBLCTL_SSCEN	SSCLK enable
	(RW) HEMIF_GBLCTL_SDCEN	SDCLK enable
	(RW) HEMIF_GBLCTL_NOHOLD	external hold disable
	(R) HEMIF_GBLCTL_HOLD_A	HOLDA output control
	(R) HEMIF_GBLCTL_HOLD	HOLD input
	(R) HEMIF_GBLCTL_ARDY	ARDY input
	(R) HEMIF_GBLCTL_BUSREQ	BUSREQ output control

### 5.6.2 HEMIF\_CECTL *CE space control register*

(RW) HEMIF_CECTL		
Fields	(RW) HEMIF_CECTL_RDHLD	read hold
	(RW) HEMIF_CECTL_WRHLDMSB	write hold MSB
	(RW) HEMIF_CECTL_MTYPE	memory type
	(RW) HEMIF_CECTL_RDSTRB	read strobe
	(RW) HEMIF_CECTL_TA	turn around time
	(RW) HEMIF_CECTL_RDSETUP	read setup
	(RW) HEMIF_CECTL_WRHLD	write hold
	(RW) HEMIF_CECTL_WRSTRB	write strobe
	(RW) HEMIF_CECTL_WRSETUP	write setup

### 5.6.3 HEMIF\_SDCTL *SDRAM control register*

(RW) HEMIF_SDCTL		
Fields	(RW) HEMIF_SDCTL_TRC	Trc value
	(RW) HEMIF_SDCTL_TRP	Trp value
	(RW) HEMIF_SDCTL_TRCD	Trcd value
	(W) HEMIF_SDCTL_INIT	SDRAM initialization
	(RW) HEMIF_SDCTL_RFEN	refresh enable
	(RW) HEMIF_SDCTL_SDWID	SDRAM width select
	(RW) HEMIF_SDCTL_SDCSZ	SDRAM column size
	(RW) HEMIF_SDCTL_SDRSZ	SDRAM row size
	(RW) HEMIF_SDCTL_SDBSZ	SDRAM bank size

### 5.6.4 HEMIF\_SDTIM *SDRAM timing register*

(RW) HEMIF_TIM		
Fields	(RW) HEMIF_SDTIM_PERIOD	refresh period
	(R) HEMIF_SDTIM_CNTR	current value of refresh counter
	(RW) HEMIF_SDTIM_XRFR	extra refreshes

### 5.6.5 HEMIF\_SDEXT *SDRAM extension register*

(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT*		
Fields	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_TCL	CAS latency
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_TRAS	Tras value
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_TRRD	Trrd value
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_TWR	Twr value
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_THZP	Thzp value
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_RD2RD	read to read cycles
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_RD2DEAC	read to DEAC/DCAB cycles
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_RD2WR	read to write cycles
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_R2WDQM	BEx to write cycles
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_WR2WR	write to write cycles
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_WR2DEAC	write to DEAC/DCAB cycles
	(RW) HEMIF_SDEXT_WR2RD	write to read cycles
	* only supported on C6X11 devices	

## 5.7 HHPI

### 5.7.1 **HHPI\_HPIC** *HPI control register*

(RW) HHPI_HPIC*		
Fields	(R) HHPI_HPIC_HWOB	halfword ordering bit
	(RW) HHPI_HPIC_DSPINT	host to CPU interrupt
	(RW) HHPI_HPIC_HINT	DSP to host interrupt
	(R) HHPI_HPIC_HRDY	ready signal to host
	(R) HHPI_HPIC_FETCH	host fetch request
* only supported on devices with an HPI		

## 5.8 HIRQ

### 5.8.1 HIRQ\_MUXL *interrupt multiplexer low register*

(RW) HIRQ_MUXL		
Fields	(RW) HIRQ_MUXL_INTSEL4	interrupt select 4
	(RW) HIRQ_MUXL_INTSEL5	interrupt select 5
	(RW) HIRQ_MUXL_INTSEL6	interrupt select 6
	(RW) HIRQ_MUXL_INTSEL7	interrupt select 7
	(RW) HIRQ_MUXL_INTSEL8	interrupt select 8
	(RW) HIRQ_MUXL_INTSEL9	interrupt select 9

### 5.8.2 HIRQ\_MUXH *interrupt multiplexer high register*

(RW) HIRQ_MUXH		
Fields	(RW) HIRQ_MUXH_INTSEL10	interrupt select 10
	(RW) HIRQ_MUXH_INTSEL11	interrupt select 11
	(RW) HIRQ_MUXH_INTSEL12	interrupt select 12
	(RW) HIRQ_MUXH_INTSEL13	interrupt select 13
	(RW) HIRQ_MUXH_INTSEL14	interrupt select 14
	(RW) HIRQ_MUXH_INTSEL15	interrupt select 15

### 5.8.3 HIRQ\_EXTPOL *external interrupt polarity register*

(RW) HIRQ_EXTPOL		
Fields	(RW) HIRQ_EXTPOL_XIP4	external interrupt 4 polarity
	(RW) HIRQ_EXTPOL_XIP5	external interrupt 5 polarity
	(RW) HIRQ_EXTPOL_XIP6	external interrupt 6 polarity
	(RW) HIRQ_EXTPOL_XIP7	external interrupt 7 polarity

## 5.9 HMCBSP

### 5.9.1 HMCBSP\_DRR *data receive register*

(R) HMCBSP_DRR0		
(R) HMCBSP_DRR1		
(R) HMCBSP_DRR2*		
Fields	(R) HMCBSP_DRR_DRR	data
* only on devices with three or more serial ports		

### 5.9.2 HMCBSP\_DXR *data transmit register*

(W) HMCBSP_DXR0		
(W) HMCBSP_DXR1		
(W) HMCBSP_DXR2*		
Fields	(W) HMCBSP_DXR_DXR	data
* only on devices with three or more serial ports		

### 5.9.3 HMCBSP\_SPCR *serial port control register*

(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR0		
(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR1		
(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR2*		
Fields	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_RRST	receiver reset
	(R) HMCBSP_SPCR_RRDY	receiver ready
	(R) HMCBSP_SPCR_RFULL	receive shift register full
	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_RSYN-CERR	receive synchronization error
	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_RINTM	receive interrupt mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_DXENA	DX enabler
	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_CLKSTP	clock stop mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_RJUST	receive data sign-ext and justification mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_DLB	digital loopback mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_XRST	transmitter reset
	(R) HMCBSP_SPCR_XRDY	transmitter ready
	(R) HMCBSP_SPCR_XEMPTY	transmitter shift register empty
	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_XSYN-CERR	transmit synchronization error
	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_XINTM	transmit interrupt mode

Table Continued

	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_GRST	sample rate generator reset
	(RW) HMCBSP_SPCR_FRST	frame sync generator reset
* only on devices with three or more serial ports		

#### 5.9.4 HMCBSP\_RCR *receive control register*

(RW) HMCBSP_RCR0 (RW) HMCBSP_RCR1 (RW) HMCBSP_RCR2*		
Fields	(RW) HMCBSP_RCR_RWDREVR5	32-bit reversal feature
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN1	element length in phase 1
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCR_RFRLLEN1	frame length in phase 1
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCR_RPHASE2	phase 2
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCR_RDATDLY	data delay
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCR_RFIG	frame ignore
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCR_RCOMPAND	companding mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCR_RWDLEN2	element length in phase 2
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCR_RFRLLEN2	frame length in phase 2
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCR_RPHASE	phases
* only on devices with three or more serial ports		

### 5.9.5 HMCBSP\_XCR *transmit control register*

(RW) HMCBSP_XCR0 (RW) HMCBSP_XCR1 (RW) HMCBSP_XCR2*		
Fields	(RW) HMCBSP_XCR_XWDREVR	32-bit reversal feature
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN1	element length in phase 1
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCR_XFRLLEN1	frame length in phase 1
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCR_XPHASE2	phase 2
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCR_XDATDLY	data delay
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCR_XFIG	frame ignore
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCR_XCOMPAND	companding mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCR_XWDLEN2	element length in phase 2
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCR_XFRLLEN2	frame length in phase 2
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCR_XPHASE	phases
* only on devices with three or more serial ports		

### 5.9.6 HMCBSP\_SRGR *sample rate generator register*

(RW) HMCBSP_SRGR0 (RW) HMCBSP_SRGR1 (RW) HMCBSP_SRGR2*		
Fields	(RW) HMCBSP_SRGR_CLKGDV	clock divider
	(RW) HMCBSP_SRGR_FWID	frame width
	(RW) HMCBSP_SRGR_FPER	frame period
	(RW) HMCBSP_SRGR_FSGM	transmit frame sync mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_SRGR_CLKSM	clock mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_SRGR_CLKSP	CLKS polarity clock edge select
	(RW) HMCBSP_SRGR_GSYNC	clock sync
* only on devices with three or more serial ports		



### 5.9.7 HMCBSP\_MCR *multichannel control register*

(RW) HMCBSP_MCR0 (RW) HMCBSP_MCR1 (RW) HMCBSP_MCR2*		
Fields	(RW) HMCBSP_MCR_RMCM	receive multichannel selection enable
	(R) HMCBSP_MCR_RCBLK	receive current subframe
	(RW) HMCBSP_MCR_RPABLK	receive partition A subframe
	(RW) HMCBSP_MCR_RPBBLK	receive partition B subframe
	(RW) HMCBSP_MCR_XMCM	transmit multichannel selection enable
	(R) HMCBSP_MCR_XCBLK	transmit current subframe
	(RW) HMCBSP_MCR_XPABLK	transmit partition A subframe
	(RW) HMCBSP_MCR_XPBBLK	transmit partition B subframe
* only on devices with three or more serial ports		

### 5.9.8 HMCBSP\_RCER *receive channel enable register*

(RW) HMCBSP_RCER0 (RW) HMCBSP_RCER1 (RW) HMCBSP_RCER2*		
Fields	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA0	enable element 0 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA1	enable element 1 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA2	enable element 2 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA3	enable element 3 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA4	enable element 4 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA5	enable element 5 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA6	enable element 6 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA7	enable element 7 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA8	enable element 8 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA9	enable element 9 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA10	enable element 10 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA11	enable element 11 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA12	enable element 12 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA13	enable element 13 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA14	enable element 14 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEA15	enable element 15 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB0	enable element 0 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB1	enable element 1 in partition B

Table Continued

	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB2	enable element 2 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB3	enable element 3 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB4	enable element 4 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB5	enable element 5 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB6	enable element 6 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB7	enable element 7 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB8	enable element 8 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB9	enable element 9 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB10	enable element 10 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB11	enable element 11 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB12	enable element 12 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB13	enable element 13 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB14	enable element 14 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_RCER_RCEB15	enable element 15 in partition B
* only on devices with three or more serial ports		

### 5.9.9 HMCBSP\_XCER *transmit channel enable register*

(RW) HMCBSP_XCER0		
(RW) HMCBSP_XCER1		
(RW) HMCBSP_XCER2*		
Fields	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA0	enable element 0 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA1	enable element 1 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA2	enable element 2 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA3	enable element 3 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA4	enable element 4 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA5	enable element 5 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA6	enable element 6 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA7	enable element 7 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA8	enable element 8 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA9	enable element 9 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA10	enable element 10 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA11	enable element 11 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA12	enable element 12 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA13	enable element 13 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA14	enable element 14 in partition A

Table Continued

	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEA15	enable element 15 in partition A
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB0	enable element 0 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB1	enable element 1 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB2	enable element 2 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB3	enable element 3 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB4	enable element 4 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB5	enable element 5 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB6	enable element 6 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB7	enable element 7 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB8	enable element 8 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB9	enable element 9 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB10	enable element 10 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB11	enable element 11 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB12	enable element 12 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB13	enable element 13 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB14	enable element 14 in partition B
	(RW) HMCBSP_XCER_XCEB15	enable element 15 in partition B
* only on devices with three or more serial ports		

## 5.9.10 HMCBSP\_PCR

*pin control register*

(RW) HMCBSP_PCR0 (RW) HMCBSP_PCR1 (RW) HMCBSP_PCR2*		
Fields	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_CLKRP	receive clock polarity
	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_CLKXP	transmit clock polarity
	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_FSRP	receive frame sync polarity
	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_FSXP	transmit frame sync polarity
	(R) HMCBSP_PCR_DRSTAT	DR pin status
	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_DXSTAT	DX pin status
	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_CLKSSTAT	CLKS pin status
	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_CLKRM	receiver clock mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_CLKXM	transmitter clock mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_FSRM	receive frame sync mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_FSXM	transmit frame sync mode

*Table Continued*

	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_RIOEN	receiver general purpose IO mode
	(RW) HMCBSP_PCR_XIOEN	transmitter general purpose IO mode
* only on devices with three or more serial ports		

## 5.10 HPWR

### 5.10.1 **HPWR\_PDCTL** *peripheral power-down control register*

(RW) HPWR_PDCTL*		
Fields	(RW) HPWR_PDCTL_DMA	DMA clock enable
	(RW) HPWR_PDCTL_EMIF	EMIF clock enable
	(RW) HPWR_PDCTL_MCBSP0	MCBSP0 clock enable
	(RW) HPWR_PDCTL_MCBSP1	MCBSP1 clock enable
	(RW) HPWR_PDCTL_MCBSP2	MCBSP2 clock enable
* only on 6202 and 6203 devices		

## 5.11 HTIMER

### 5.11.1 HTIMER\_CTL *timer control register*

(RW) HTIMER_CTL0		
(RW) HTIMER_CTL1		
Fields	(RW) HTIMER_CTL_FUNC	function of TOUT pin
	(RW) HTIMER_CTL_INVOUT	TOUT inverter control
	(RW) HTIMER_CTL_DATOUT	data output
	(RW) HTIMER_CTL_DATIN	data in
	(RW) HTIMER_CTL_PWID	pulse width
	(RW) HTIMER_CTL_GO	GO bit
	(RW) HTIMER_CTL_HLD	hold
	(RW) HTIMER_CTL_CP	clock/pulse mode
	(RW) HTIMER_CTL_CLKSRC	timer input clock source
	(RW) HTIMER_CTL_INVINP	TINP inverter control
	(R) HTIMER_CTL_TSTAT	timer status

### 5.11.2 HTIMER\_PRD *timer period register*

(RW) HTIMER_PRD0			
(RW) HTIMER_PRD1			
Fields	(RW) HTIMER_PRD_PRD	period	

### 5.11.3 HTIMER\_CNT *timer count register*

(RW) HTIMER_CNT0			
(RW) HTIMER_CNT1			
Fields	(RW) HTIMER_CNT_CNT	count	

# Glossary

---

---

---

## A

**address:** The location of program code or data stored; an individually accessible memory location.

**A-law companding:** See *compress and expand (compand)*.

**API:** See *application programming interface*.

**API module:** A set of API functions designed for a specific purpose.

**application programming interface (API):** Used for proprietary application programs to interact with communications software or to conform to protocols from another vendor's product.

**assembler:** A software program that creates a machine language program from a source file that contains assembly language instructions, directives, and macros. The assembler substitutes absolute operation codes for symbolic operation codes and absolute or relocatable addresses for symbolic addresses.

**assert:** To make a digital logic device pin active. If the pin is active low, then a low voltage on the pin asserts it. If the pin is active high, then a high voltage asserts it.

## B

**bit:** A binary digit, either a 0 or 1.

**big endian:** An addressing protocol in which bytes are numbered from left to right within a word. More significant bytes in a word have lower numbered addresses. Endian ordering is specific to hardware and is determined at reset. See also *little endian*.

**block:** The three least significant bits of the program address. These correspond to the address within a fetch packet of the first instruction being addressed.

**board support library (BSL):** The BSL is a set of application programming interfaces (APIs) consisting of target side DSP code used to configure and control board level peripherals.

**boot:** The process of loading a program into program memory.

**boot mode:** The method of loading a program into program memory. The 'C6x DSP supports booting from external ROM or the host port interface (HPI).

**BSL:** *See board support library.*

**byte:** A sequence of eight adjacent bits operated upon as a unit.

## C

**cache:** A fast storage buffer in the central processing unit of a computer.

**cache module:** CACHE is an API module containing a set of functions for managing data and program cache.

**cache controller:** System component that coordinates program accesses between CPU program fetch mechanism, cache, and external memory.

**CCS:** Code Composer Studio.

**central processing unit (CPU):** The portion of the processor involved in arithmetic, shifting, and Boolean logic operations, as well as the generation of data- and program-memory addresses. The CPU includes the central arithmetic logic unit (CALU), the multiplier, and the auxiliary register arithmetic unit (ARAU).

**CHIP:** *See CHIP module.*

**CHIP module:** The CHIP module is an API module where chip-specific and device-related code resides. CHIP has some API functions for obtaining device endianness, memory map mode if applicable, CPU and REV IDs, and clock speed.

**chip support library (CSL):** The CSL is a set of application programming interfaces (APIs) consisting of target side DSP code used to configure and control all on-chip peripherals.

**clock cycle:** A periodic or sequence of events based on the input from the external clock.

**clock modes:** Options used by the clock generator to change the internal CPU clock frequency to a fraction or multiple of the frequency of the input clock signal.



**code:** A set of instructions written to perform a task; a computer program or part of a program.

**coder-decoder or compression/decompression (codec):** A device that codes in one direction of transmission and decodes in another direction of transmission.

**compiler:** A computer program that translates programs in a high-level language into their assembly-language equivalents.

**compress and expand (comband):** A quantization scheme for audio signals in which the input signal is compressed and then, after processing, is reconstructed at the output by expansion. There are two distinct companding schemes: A-law (used in Europe) and  $\mu$ -law (used in the United States).

**control register:** A register that contains bit fields that define the way a device operates.

**control register file:** A set of control registers.

**CSL:** See *chip support library*.

**CSL module:** The CSL module is the top-level CSL API module. It interfaces to all other modules and its main purpose is to initialize the CSL library.

## D

**DAT:** *Data; see DAT module.*

**DAT module:** The DAT is an API module that is used to move data around by means of DMA/EDMA hardware. This module serves as a level of abstraction that works the same for devices that have the DMA or EDMA peripheral.

**device ID:** Configuration register that identifies each peripheral component interconnect (PCI).

**digital signal processor (DSP):** A semiconductor that turns analog signals—such as sound or light—into digital signals, which are discrete or discontinuous electrical impulses, so that they can be manipulated.

**direct memory access (DMA):** A mechanism whereby a device other than the host processor contends for and receives mastery of the memory bus so that data transfers can take place independent of the host.

**DMA :** See *direct memory access*.

**DMA module:** DMA is an API module that currently has two architectures used on 'C6x devices: DMA and EDMA (enhanced DMA). Devices such as the '6201 have the DMA peripheral, whereas the '6211 has the EDMA peripheral.

**DMA source:** The module where the DMA data originates. DMA data is read from the DMA source.

**DMA transfer:** The process of transferring data from one part of memory to another. Each DMA transfer consists of a read bus cycle (source to DMA holding register) and a write bus cycle (DMA holding register to destination).

## E

**EDMA:** *Enhanced direct memory access; see EDMA module.*

**EDMA module:** EDMA is an API module that currently has two architectures used on 'C6x devices: DMA and EDMA (enhanced DMA). Devices such as the '6201 have the DMA peripheral, whereas the '6211 has the EDMA peripheral.

**EMIF:** *See external memory interface; see also EMIF module.*

**EMIF module:** EMIF is an API module that is used for configuring the EMIF registers.

**evaluation module (EVM):** Board and software tools that allow the user to evaluate a specific device.

**external interrupt:** A hardware interrupt triggered by a specific value on a pin.

**external memory interface (EMIF):** Microprocessor hardware that is used to read to and write from off-chip memory.

## F

**fetch packet:** A contiguous 8-word series of instructions fetched by the CPU and aligned on an 8-word boundary.

**flag:** A binary status indicator whose state indicates whether a particular condition has occurred or is in effect.

**frame:** An 8-word space in the cache RAMs. Each fetch packet in the cache resides in only one frame. A cache update loads a frame with the requested fetch packet. The cache contains 512 frames.

**G**

**global interrupt enable bit (GIE):** A bit in the control status register (CSR) that is used to enable or disable maskable interrupts.

**H**

**HAL:** *Hardware abstraction layer* of the CSL. The HAL underlies the service layer and provides it a set of macros and constants for manipulating the peripheral registers at the lowest level. It is a low-level symbolic interface into the hardware providing symbols that describe peripheral registers/bitfields and macros for manipulating them.

**host:** A device to which other devices (peripherals) are connected and that generally controls those devices.

**host port interface (HPI):** A parallel interface that the CPU uses to communicate with a host processor.

**HPI:** See *host port interface*; see also *HPI module*.

**HPI module:** HPI is an API module used for configuring the HPI registers. Functions are provided for reading HPI status bits and setting interrupt events.

**I**

**index:** A relative offset in the program address that specifies which of the 512 frames in the cache into which the current access is mapped.

**indirect addressing:** An addressing mode in which an address points to another pointer rather than to the actual data; this mode is prohibited in RISC architecture.

**instruction fetch packet:** A group of up to eight instructions held in memory for execution by the CPU.

**internal interrupt:** A hardware interrupt caused by an on-chip peripheral.

**interrupt:** A signal sent by hardware or software to a processor requesting attention. An interrupt tells the processor to suspend its current operation, save the current task status, and perform a particular set of instructions. Interrupts communicate with the operating system and prioritize tasks to be performed.

**interrupt service fetch packet (ISFP):** A fetch packet used to service interrupts. If eight instructions are insufficient, the user must branch out of this block for additional interrupt service. If the delay slots of the branch do not reside within the ISFP, execution continues from execute packets in the next fetch packet (the next ISFP).

**interrupt service routine (ISR):** A module of code that is executed in response to a hardware or software interrupt.

**interrupt service table (IST)** A table containing a corresponding entry for each of the 16 physical interrupts. Each entry is a single-fetch packet and has a label associated with it.

**Internal peripherals:** Devices connected to and controlled by a host device. The 'C6x internal peripherals include the direct memory access (DMA) controller, multichannel buffered serial ports (McBSPs), host port interface (HPI), external memory-interface (EMIF), and runtime support timers.

**IRQ:** *Interrupt request; see IRQ module.*

**IRQ module:** IRQ is an API module that manages CPU interrupts.

**IST:** *See interrupt service table.*

## L

**least significant bit (LSB):** The lowest-order bit in a word.

**linker:** A software tool that combines object files to form an object module, which can be loaded into memory and executed.

**little endian:** An addressing protocol in which bytes are numbered from right to left within a word. More significant bytes in a word have higher-numbered addresses. Endian ordering is specific to hardware and is determined at reset. See also *big endian*.

**M**

**μ-law companding:** See *compress and expand (compand)*.

**maskable interrupt:** A hardware interrupt that can be enabled or disabled through software.

**MCBSP:** See *multichannel buffered serial port*; see also *MCBSP module*.

**MCBSP module:** MCBSP is an API module that contains a set of functions for configuring the McBSP registers.

**memory map:** A graphical representation of a computer system's memory, showing the locations of program space, data space, reserved space, and other memory-resident elements.

**memory-mapped register:** An on-chip register mapped to an address in memory. Some memory-mapped registers are mapped to data memory, and some are mapped to input/output memory.

**most significant bit (MSB):** The highest order bit in a word.

**multichannel buffered serial port (McBSP):** An on-chip full-duplex circuit that provides direct serial communication through several channels to external serial devices.

**multiplexer:** A device for selecting one of several available signals.

**N**

**nonmaskable interrupt (NMI):** An interrupt that can be neither masked nor disabled.

**O**

**object file:** A file that has been assembled or linked and contains machine language object code.

**off chip:** A state of being external to a device.

**on chip:** A state of being internal to a device.

## P

**peripheral:** A device connected to and usually controlled by a host device.

**program cache:** A fast memory cache for storing program instructions allowing for quick execution.

**program memory:** Memory accessed through the 'C6x's program fetch interface.

**PWR:** *Power; see PWR module.*

**PWR module:** PWR is an API module that is used to configure the power-down control registers, if applicable, and to invoke various power-down modes.

## R

**random-access memory (RAM):** A type of memory device in which the individual locations can be accessed in any order.

**register:** A small area of high speed memory located within a processor or electronic device that is used for temporarily storing data or instructions. Each register is given a name, contains a few bytes of information, and is referenced by programs.

**reduced-instruction-set computer (RISC):** A computer whose instruction set and related decode mechanism are much simpler than those of micro-programmed complex instruction set computers. The result is a higher instruction throughput and a faster real-time interrupt service response from a smaller, cost-effective chip.

**reset:** A means of bringing the CPU to a known state by setting the registers and control bits to predetermined values and signaling execution to start at a specified address.

**RTOS** *Real-time operating system.*

## S

**service layer:** The top layer of the 2-layer chip support library architecture providing high-level APIs into the CSL and BSL. The service layer is where the actual APIs are defined and is the layer the user interfaces to.

**STDINC:** *Standard include; see STDINC module*

**STDINC module:** STDINC is an API module that defines some identifiers which are globally useful to everyone and are used throughout the CSL source code.

**synchronous-burst static random-access memory (SBSRAM):** RAM whose contents does not have to be refreshed periodically. Transfer of data is at a fixed rate relative to the clock speed of the device, but the speed is increased.

**synchronous dynamic random-access memory (SDRAM):** RAM whose contents is refreshed periodically so the data is not lost. Transfer of data is at a fixed rate relative to the clock speed of the device.

**syntax:** The grammatical and structural rules of a language. All higher-level programming languages possess a formal syntax.

**system software:** The blanket term used to denote collectively the chip support libraries and board support libraries.

## T

**tag:** The 18 most significant bits of the program address. This value corresponds to the physical address of the fetch packet that is in that frame.

**timer:** A programmable peripheral used to generate pulses or to time events.

**TIMER module:** TIMER is an API module used for configuring the timer registers.

## W

**word:** A multiple of eight bits that is operated upon as a unit. For the 'C6x, a word is 32 bits in length.





# Index

## A

- A-law companding, defined A-1
- address, defined A-1
- API, defined A-1
- API (application programming interface)
  - module introduction 2-2
    - CACHE 2-6
    - CACHE architectures 2-6
    - CHIP 2-10
    - CSL 2-7
    - DAT 2-8
    - DAT routines 2-8
    - devices with DMA 2-9
    - devices with EDMA 2-9
    - DMA 2-11
    - DMA, using a channel 2-12
    - DMA/EDMA management 2-8
    - EDMA 2-13
    - EDMA, using a channel 2-14
    - EMIF 2-15
    - function inlining 2-4
    - HPI 2-16
    - initializing the registers of a peripheral 2-4
    - IRQ 2-17
    - MCBSP 2-18
    - MCBSP, using a MCBSP port 2-19
    - MK macros 2-2
    - OPEN and CLOSE functions 2-2
    - PWR 2-20
    - STDINC 2-21
    - TIMER 2-22
    - TIMER, using a TIMER device 2-22
  - modules within service layer 1-5
- API function tables
  - CACHE 3-2
  - CHIP 3-3
  - CSL 3-2
  - DAT 3-3
  - DMA 3-4
  - EDMA 3-6
  - EMIF 3-7
  - HPI 3-8
  - IRQ 3-8
  - MCBSP 3-9
  - PWR 3-10
  - TIMER 3-11
- API functions 3-1
- API module, defined A-1
- API module support
  - DMA\_AllocGlobalReg 4-22
  - TMS320C6000 devices, table 4-2
- API reference
  - BOOL 4-117
  - CACHE 4-3
  - CACHE\_Clean 4-3
  - CACHE\_EnableCaching 4-4
  - CACHE\_Flush 4-5
  - CACHE\_GetL2SramSize 4-5
  - CACHE\_Invalidate 4-6
  - CACHE\_Reset 4-7
  - CACHE\_SetL2Mode 4-7
  - CACHE\_SetPccMode 4-9
  - CACHE\_SUPPORT 4-9
  - CHIP 4-19
  - CHIP\_6XXX 4-19
  - CHIP\_GetCpuld 4-20
  - CHIP\_GetEndian 4-20
  - CHIP\_GetMapMode 4-21
  - CHIP\_GetRevId 4-21
  - CHIP\_SUPPORT 4-21
  - CSL 4-10
  - CSL\_Init 4-10
  - DAT 4-11
  - DAT\_Close 4-11
  - DAT\_Copy 4-11
  - DAT\_Fill 4-14
  - DAT\_Open 4-16

DAT\_Support 4-18  
 DAT\_Wait 4-18  
 DMA 4-22  
 DMA\_AutoStart 4-23  
 DMA\_CHA\_CNT 4-23  
 DMA\_ClearCondition 4-24  
 DMA\_Close 4-24  
 DMA\_CONFIG 4-25  
 DMA\_ConfigA 4-25  
 DMA\_ConfigB 4-26  
 DMA\_FreeGlobalReg 4-27  
 DMA\_GET\_CONDITION 4-28  
 DMA\_GetEventId 4-28  
 DMA\_GetGlobalReg 4-29  
 DMA\_GetStatus 4-30  
 DMA\_MK\_AUXCTL 4-30  
 DMA\_MK\_DST 4-32  
 DMA\_MK\_GBLADDR 4-33  
 DMA\_MK\_GBLCNT 4-34  
 DMA\_MK\_GBLIDX 4-35  
 DMA\_MK\_PRICTL 4-36  
 DMA\_MK\_SECCTL 4-41  
 DMA\_MK\_SRC 4-44  
 DMA\_MK\_XFRCNT 4-45  
 DMA\_Open 4-46  
 DMA\_Pause 4-47  
 DMA\_Reset 4-47  
 DMA\_SetAuxCtl 4-48  
 DMA\_SetGlobalReg 4-48  
 DMA\_Start 4-49  
 DMA\_Stop 4-49  
 DMA\_SUPPORT 4-49  
 DMA\_Wait 4-50  
 EDMA 4-51  
 EDMA\_AllocTable 4-51  
 EDMA\_CHA\_CNT 4-51  
 EDMA\_Clear\_Channel 4-52  
 EDMA\_Close 4-52  
 EDMA\_CONFIG 4-53  
 EDMA\_ConfigA 4-54  
 EDMA\_ConfigB 4-55  
 EDMA\_DisableChannel 4-56  
 EDMA\_EnableChannel 4-56  
 EDMA\_FreeTable 4-57  
 EDMA\_GetChannel 4-57  
 EDMA\_GetPriQStatus 4-58  
 EDMA\_GetScratchAddr 4-58  
 EDMA\_GetScratchSize 4-58  
 EDMA\_GetTableAddress 4-59  
 EDMA\_MK\_CNT 4-59  
 EDMA\_MK\_DST 4-60  
 EDMA\_MK\_IDX 4-61  
 EDMA\_MK\_OPT 4-62  
 EDMA\_MK\_RLD 4-64  
 EDMA\_MK\_SRC 4-65  
 EDMA\_Open 4-66  
 EDMA\_Reset 4-67  
 EDMA\_SetChannel 4-68  
 EDMA\_SUPPORT 4-68  
 EDMA\_TABLE\_CNT 4-68  
 EMIF 4-69  
 EMIF\_CONFIG 4-69  
 EMIF\_ConfigA 4-69  
 EMIF\_ConfigB 4-70  
 EMIF\_MK\_CECTL 4-71  
 EMIF\_MK\_GBLCTL 4-73  
 EMIF\_MK\_SDCTL 4-75  
 EMIF\_MK\_SDEXT 4-77  
 EMIF\_MK\_SDTIM 4-79  
 EMIF\_SUPPORT 4-80  
 FALSE 4-117  
 HPI 4-81  
 HPI\_GetDspint 4-81  
 HPI\_GetEventId 4-81  
 HPI\_GetFetch 4-81  
 HPI\_GetHint 4-81  
 HPI\_GetHrdy 4-82  
 HPI\_GetHwob 4-82  
 HPI\_SetDspint 4-82  
 HPI\_SetHint 4-82  
 HPI\_SUPPORT 4-83  
 INT16 4-117  
 INT32 4-117  
 INT40 4-117  
 INT8 4-117  
 INV 4-117  
 IRQ\_Clear 4-84  
 IRQ 4-84  
 IRQ\_Disable 4-84  
 IRQ\_Enable 4-84  
 IRQ\_EVT\_NNNN 4-85  
 IRQ\_Map 4-85  
 IRQ\_Set 4-86  
 IRQ\_SUPPORT 4-86  
 IRQ\_Test 4-86  
 MCBSP 4-87  
 MCBSP\_Close 4-87  
 MCBSP\_CONFIG 4-87  
 MCBSP\_ConfigA 4-88  
 MCBSP\_ConfigB 4-89

MCBSP\_EnableFsync 4-90  
 MCBSP\_EnableRcv 4-90  
 MCBSP\_CEnableSrg 4-90  
 MCBSP\_EnableXmt 4-91  
 MCBSP\_GetPins 4-91  
 MCBSP\_GetRcvAddr 4-92  
 MCBSP\_CGetRcvEventId 4-92  
 MCBSP\_GetXmtAddr 4-92  
 MCBSP\_GetXmtEventId 4-93  
 MCBSP\_MK\_MCR 4-93  
 MCBSP\_MK\_PCR 4-95  
 MCBSP\_MK\_RCER 4-97  
 MCBSP\_MK\_RCR 4-98  
 MCBSP\_MK\_SPCR 4-101  
 MCBSP\_MK\_SRGR 4-103  
 MCBSP\_MK\_XCER 4-105  
 MCBSP\_MK\_XCR 4-106  
 MCBSP\_Open 4-108  
 MCBSP\_PORT\_CNT 4-109  
 MCBSP\_Read 4-109  
 MCBSP\_Reset 4-109  
 MCBSP\_Rfull 4-110  
 MCBSP\_Rrdy 4-110  
 MCBSP\_RsyncErr 4-111  
 MCBSP\_SetPins 4-111  
 MCBSP\_SUPPORT 4-112  
 MCBSP\_Write 4-112  
 MCBSP\_Xempty 4-112  
 MCBSP\_Xrdy 4-113  
 MCBSP\_XsyncErr 4-113  
 NO 4-118  
 PWR 4-114  
 PWR\_ConfigB 4-114  
 PWR\_MK\_PDCTL 4-114  
 PWR\_PowerDown 4-115  
 PWR\_SUPPORT 4-116  
 STDINC 4-117  
 TIMER 4-119  
 TIMER\_Close 4-119  
 TIMER\_CONFIG 4-119  
 TIMER\_ConfigA 4-120  
 TIMER\_ConfigB 4-120  
 TIMER\_DEVICE\_CNT 4-121  
 TIMER\_GetCount 4-121  
 TIMER\_GetDatin 4-121  
 TIMER\_GetEventId 4-122  
 TIMER\_GetPeriod 4-122  
 TIMER\_GetTstat 4-122  
 TIMER\_MK\_CTL 4-123  
 TIMER\_Open 4-125

TIMER\_Pause 4-125  
 TIMER\_Reset 4-126  
 TIMER\_Resume 4-126  
 TIMER\_SetCount 4-126  
 TIMER\_SetDataout 4-127  
 TIMER\_SetPeriod 4-127  
 TIMER\_Start 4-127  
 TIMER\_SUPPORT 4-128  
 TRUE 4-118  
 UINT16 4-118  
 UINT32 4-118  
 UINT40 4-118  
 UINT8 4-118  
 YES 4-118

application programming interface, defined A-1

assembler, defined A-1

assert, defined A-1

## B

big endian, defined A-1

bit, defined A-1

block, defined A-1

board support library, defined A-2

BOOL, API reference 4-117

boot, defined A-2

boot mode, defined A-2

BSL, defined A-2

byte, defined A-2

## C

### CACHE

API function table 3-2

API reference 4-3

module introduction 2-6

*architectures* 2-6

cache, defined A-2

cache controller, defined A-2

CACHE module, defined A-2

CACHE\_Clean, API reference 4-3

CACHE\_EnableCaching 4-4

CACHE\_Flush, API reference 4-5

CACHE\_GetL2SramSize, API reference 4-5

CACHE\_Invalidate, API reference 4-6

CACHE\_Reset, API reference 4-7

CACHE\_SetPccMode, API reference 4-9  
 CACHE\_SUPPORT, API reference 4-9  
 CCS, defined A-2  
 central processing unit (CPU), defined A-2  
 CHIP  
   API function table 3-3  
   API reference 4-19  
   defined A-2  
   module introduction 2-10  
 CHIP module, defined A-2  
 chip support library, defined A-2  
 chip support library (CSL)  
   API modules, list 1-2  
   API modules within service layer, figure 1-5  
   HAL overview 1-4  
   layers, figure 1-3  
   overview 1-2  
   service layer overview 1-5  
 CHIP\_6XXX, API reference 4-19  
 CHIP\_GetCpuld, API reference 4-20  
 CHIP\_GetEndian, API reference 4-20  
 CHIP\_GetMapMode, API reference 4-21  
 CHIP\_GetRevid, API reference 4-21  
 CHIP\_SUPPORT, API reference 4-21  
 clock cycle, defined A-2  
 clock modes, defined A-2  
 code, defined A-3  
 coder–decoder, defined A-3  
 compiler, defined A-3  
 compress and expand (compand), defined A-3  
 control register, defined A-3  
 control register file, defined A-3  
 CSL  
   API function table 3-2  
   API reference 4-10  
   defined A-3  
   module introduction 2-7  
 CSL (chip support library)  
   API modules, list 1-2  
   API modules within service layer, figure 1-5  
   HAL overview 1-4  
   layers, figure 1-3  
   overview 1-2  
   service layer overview 1-5  
 CSL API reference, introduction 4-2  
 CSL function tables 3-2

CSL module, defined A-3  
 CSL\_Init, API reference 4-10

## D

DAT  
   API function table 3-3  
   API reference 4-11  
   defined A-3  
   module introduction 2-8  
     *devices with DMA* 2-9  
     *devices with EDMA* 2-9  
     *DMA/EDMA management* 2-8  
     *routines* 2-8  
 DAT module, defined A-3  
 DAT\_Close, API reference 4-11  
 DAT\_Copy, API reference 4-11  
 DAT\_Fill, API reference 4-14  
 DAT\_Open, API reference 4-16  
 DAT\_Support, API reference 4-18  
 DAT\_Wait, API reference 4-18  
 device ID, defined A-3  
 digital signal processor (DSP), defined A-3  
 direct memory access (DMA)  
   defined A-3  
   source, defined A-4  
   transfer, defined A-4  
 DMA  
   API function table 3-4  
   API reference 4-22  
   defined A-3  
   module introduction 2-11  
     *using a DMA channel* 2-12  
 DMA module, defined A-4  
 DMA\_AllocGlobalReg, API reference 4-22  
 DMA\_AutoStart, API reference 4-23  
 DMA\_CHA\_CNT, API reference 4-23  
 DMA\_ClearCondition, API reference 4-24  
 DMA\_Close, API reference 4-24  
 DMA\_CONFIG, API reference 4-25  
 DMA\_ConfigA, API reference 4-25  
 DMA\_ConfigB, API reference 4-26  
 DMA\_FreeGlobalReg, API reference 4-27  
 DMA\_GET\_CONDITION, API reference 4-28  
 DMA\_GetEventID 4-28  
 DMA\_GetGlobalReg 4-29  
 DMA\_GetStatus, API reference 4-30

DMA\_MK\_AUXCTL, API reference 4-30  
 DMA\_MK\_DST, API reference 4-32  
 DMA\_MK\_GBLADDR, API reference 4-33  
 DMA\_MK\_GBLCNT, API reference 4-34  
 DMA\_MK\_GBLIDX, API reference 4-35  
 DMA\_MK\_PRICTL, API reference 4-36  
 DMA\_MK\_SECCTL, API reference 4-41  
 DMA\_MK\_SRC, API reference 4-44  
 DMA\_MK\_XFRCNT, API reference 4-45  
 DMA\_Pause, API reference 4-47  
 DMA\_Reset, API reference 4-47  
 DMA\_SetAuxCtl, API reference 4-48  
 DMA\_SetGlobalReg, API reference 4-48  
 DMA\_Start, API reference 4-49  
 DMA\_Stop, API reference 4-49  
 DMA\_SUPPORT, API reference 4-49  
 DMA\_Wait, API reference 4-50

## E

### EDMA

API function table 3-6  
 API reference 4-51  
 channel, using 2-14  
 defined A-4  
 module introduction 2-13  
     *using an EDMA channel* 2-14  
 EDMA module, defined A-4  
 EDMA\_AllocTable, API reference 4-51  
 EDMA\_CHA\_CNT 4-51  
 EDMA\_Clear\_Channel, API reference 4-52  
 EDMA\_Close, API reference 4-52  
 EDMA\_CONFIG, API reference 4-53  
 EDMA\_ConfigA, API reference 4-54  
 EDMA\_ConfigB, API reference 4-55  
 EDMA\_DisableChannel, API reference 4-56  
 EDMA\_EnableChannel, API reference 4-56  
 EDMA\_FreeTable, API reference 4-57  
 EDMA\_GetChannel, API reference 4-57  
 EDMA\_GetPriQStatus, API reference 4-58  
 EDMA\_GetScratchAddr, API reference 4-58  
 EDMA\_GetScratchSize, API reference 4-58  
 EDMA\_GetTableAddress, API reference 4-59  
 EDMA\_MK\_CNT, API reference 4-59

EDMA\_MK\_DST, API reference 4-60  
 EDMA\_MK\_IDX, API reference 4-61  
 EDMA\_MK\_RLD, API reference 4-64  
 EDMA\_MK\_SRC, API reference 4-65  
 EDMA\_Open, API reference 4-66  
 EDMA\_Reset, API reference 4-67  
 EDMA\_SetChannel, API reference 4-68  
 EDMA\_SUPPORT, API reference 4-68  
 EDMA\_TABLE\_CNT, API reference 4-68

### EMIF

API function table 3-7  
 API reference 4-69  
 defined A-4  
 module introduction 2-15  
 EMIF module, defined A-4  
 EMIF\_CONFIG, API reference 4-69  
 EMIF\_ConfigA, API reference 4-69  
 EMIF\_ConfigB 4-70  
 EMIF\_MK\_CECTL, API reference 4-71  
 EMIF\_MK\_GBLCTL, API reference 4-73  
 EMIF\_MK\_SDCTL, API reference 4-75  
 EMIF\_MK\_SDEXT, API reference 4-77  
 EMIF\_MK\_SDTIM, API reference 4-79  
 evaluation module, defined A-4  
 external interrupt, defined A-4  
 external memory interface (EMIF), defined A-4

## F

FALSE, API reference 4-117  
 fetch packet, defined A-4  
 flag, defined A-4  
 frame, defined A-4  
 function inlining 2-4

## G

GIE bit, defined A-5

## H

HAL, defined A-5  
 HAL (hardware abstraction layer)  
     overview 1-4  
     reference 5-1  
     *example usage* 5-3

*HCACHE* 5-4

HAL (hardware abstraction layer), reference

HCACHE\_CCFG 5-4  
HCACHE\_L1DFBAR 5-5  
HCACHE\_L1DFWC 5-5  
HCACHE\_L1PFBAR 5-5  
HCACHE\_L1PFWC 5-5  
HCACHE\_L2CBAR 5-4  
HCACHE\_L2CLEAN 5-5  
HCACHE\_L2CWC 5-4  
HCACHE\_L2FBAR 5-4  
HCACHE\_L2FLUSH 5-5  
HCACHE\_L2FWC 5-4  
HCACHE\_MAR 5-6  
HCHIP\_AMR 5-10  
HCHIP\_CSR 5-7  
HCHIP\_FADCR 5-11  
HCHIP\_FAUCR 5-12  
HCHIP\_FMCR 5-13  
HCHIP\_ICR 5-9  
HCHIP\_IER 5-9  
HCHIP\_IFR 5-8  
HCHIP\_IRP 5-10  
HCHIP\_ISR 5-8  
HCHIP\_ISTP 5-10  
HCHIP\_NRP 5-10  
HCHIP\_NULL 5-7  
HDMA\_AUXCTL 5-14  
HDMA\_DST 5-16  
HDMA\_GBLADDR 5-16  
HDMA\_GBLCNT 5-16  
HDMA\_GBLIDX 5-16  
HDMA\_PRICTL 5-14  
HDMA\_SECCTL 5-15  
HDMA\_SRC 5-15  
HDMA\_XFRCNT 5-16  
HEDMA\_CCER 5-25  
HEDMA\_CIER 5-25  
HEDMA\_CIPR 5-24  
HEDMA\_CNT 5-20  
HEDMA\_DST 5-21  
HEDMA\_ECR 5-28  
HEDMA\_EER 5-27  
HEDMA\_ER 5-26  
HEDMA\_ESR 5-29  
HEDMA\_IDX 5-22  
HEDMA\_OPT 5-17  
HEDMA\_PQSR 5-23  
HEDMA\_RLD 5-23  
HEDMA\_SRC 5-19

HEMIF\_CECTL 5-30

HEMIF\_GBLCTL 5-30

HEMIF\_SDCTL 5-31

HEMIF\_SDEXT 5-31

HEMIF\_SDTIM 5-31

HHPI\_HPIC 5-32

HIRQ\_EXTPOL 5-33

HIRQ\_MUXH 5-33

HIRQ\_MUXL 5-33

HMCBSP\_DRR 5-34

HMCBSP\_DXR 5-34

HMCBSP\_MCR 5-37

HMCBSP\_PCR 5-39

HMCBSP\_PDCTL 5-41

HMCBSP\_RCER 5-37

HMCBSP\_RCR 5-35

HMCBSP\_SPCR 5-34

HMCBSP\_SRGR 5-36

HMCBSP\_XCER 5-38

HMCBSP\_XCR 5-36

HTIMER\_CNT 5-42

HTIMER\_CTL 5-42

HTIMER\_PRD 5-42

introduction 5-2

memory-mapped register constants 5-2

memory-mapped register field constants 5-2

memory-mapped register field macros 5-2

memory-mapped register macros 5-2

hardware abstraction layer (HAL), reference 5-1

introduction 5-2

HCACHE\_CCFG, HAL reference 5-4

HCACHE\_L1DFBAR, HAL reference 5-5

HCACHE\_L1DFWC, HAL reference 5-5

HCACHE\_L1PFBAR, HAL reference 5-5

HCACHE\_L1PFWC, HAL reference 5-5

HCACHE\_L2CBAR, HAL reference 5-4

HCACHE\_L2CLEAN, HAL reference 5-5

HCACHE\_L2CWC, HAL reference 5-4

HCACHE\_L2FBAR, HAL reference 5-4

HCACHE\_L2FLUSH, HAL reference 5-5

HCACHE\_L2FWC, HAL reference 5-4

HCACHE\_MAR, HAL reference 5-6

HCHIP\_AMR, HAL reference 5-10

HCHIP\_CSR, HAL reference 5-7

HCHIP\_FADCR, HAL reference 5-11

HCHIP\_FAUCR, HAL reference 5-12

HCHIP\_FMCR, HAL reference 5-13

HCHIP\_ICR, HAL reference 5-9

- HCHIP\_IER, HAL reference 5-9
- HCHIP\_IFR, HAL reference 5-8
- HCHIP\_IRP, HAL reference 5-10
- HCHIP\_ISR, HAL reference 5-8
- HCHIP\_ISTP, HAL reference 5-10
- HCHIP\_NRP, HAL reference 5-10
- HCHIP\_NULL, HAL reference 5-7
- HDMA\_AUXCTL, HAL reference 5-14
- HDMA\_DST, HAL reference 5-16
- HDMA\_GBLADDR, HAL reference 5-16
- HDMA\_GBLCNT, HAL reference 5-16
- HDMA\_GBLIDX, HAL reference 5-16
- HDMA\_PRICTL, HAL reference 5-14
- HDMA\_SECCTL, HAL reference 5-15
- HDMA\_SRC, HAL reference 5-15
- HDMA\_XFRCNT, HAL reference 5-16
- HEDMA\_CCER, HAL reference 5-25
- HEDMA\_CIER, HAL reference 5-25
- HEDMA\_CIPR, HAL reference 5-24
- HEDMA\_CNT, HAL reference 5-20
- HEDMA\_DST, HAL reference 5-21
- HEDMA\_ECR, HAL reference 5-28
- HEDMA\_EER, HAL reference 5-27
- HEDMA\_ER, HAL reference 5-26
- HEDMA\_ESR, HAL reference 5-29
- HEDMA\_IDX, HAL reference 5-22
- HEDMA\_OPT, HAL reference 5-17
- HEDMA\_PQSR, HAL reference 5-23
- HEDMA\_RLD, HAL reference 5-23
- HEDMA\_SRC, HAL reference 5-19
- HEMIF\_CECTL, HAL reference 5-30
- HEMIF\_GBLCTL, HAL reference 5-30
- HEMIF\_SDCTL, HAL reference 5-31
- HEMIF\_SDEXT, HAL reference 5-31
- HEMIF\_SDTIM, HAL reference 5-31
- HHPI\_HPIC, HAL reference 5-32
- HIRQ\_EXTPOL, HAL reference 5-33
- HIRQ\_MUXH, HAL reference 5-33
- HIRQ\_MUXL, HAL reference 5-33
- HMCBSP\_DRR, HAL reference 5-34
- HMCBSP\_DXR, HAL reference 5-34
- HMCBSP\_MCR, HAL reference 5-37
- HMCBSP\_PCR, HAL reference 5-39
- HMCBSP\_PDCTL, HAL reference 5-41
- HMCBSP\_RCER, HAL reference 5-37
- HMCBSP\_RCR, HAL reference 5-35
- HMCBSP\_SPCR, HAL reference 5-34
- HMCBSP\_SRGR, HAL reference 5-36
- HMCBSP\_XCER, HAL reference 5-38
- HMCBSP\_XCR, HAL reference 5-36
- host, defined A-5
- host port interface (HPI), defined A-5
- HPI
  - API function table 3-8
  - API reference 4-81
  - defined A-5
  - module introduction 2-16
- HPI module, defined A-5
- HPI\_GetDspint, API reference 4-81
- HPI\_GetEventId, API reference 4-81
- HPI\_GetFetch, API reference 4-81
- HPI\_GetHint, API reference 4-81
- HPI\_GetHrdy, API reference 4-82
- HPI\_GetHwob, API reference 4-82
- HPI\_SetDspint, API reference 4-82
- HPI\_SetHint, API reference 4-82
- HPI\_SUPPORT, API reference 4-83
- HTIMER\_CNT, HAL reference 5-42
- HTIMER\_CTL, HAL reference 5-42
- HTIMER\_PRD, HAL reference 5-42

## I

- index, defined A-5
- indirect addressing, defined A-5
- initializing the registers of a peripheral 2-4
- instruction fetch packet, defined A-5
- INT16, API reference 4-117
- INT32, API reference 4-117
- INT40, API reference 4-117
- INT8, API reference 4-117
- internal interrupt, defined A-5
- internal peripherals, defined A-6
- interrupt, defined A-6
- interrupt service fetch packet (ISFP), defined A-6
- interrupt service routine (ISR), defined A-6
- interrupt service table (IST), defined A-6
- INV, API reference 4-117

## IRQ

- API function table 3-8
- API reference 4-84
- defined A-6
- module introduction 2-17
- IRQ module, defined A-6
- IRQ\_Clear, API reference 4-84
- IRQ\_Disable, API reference 4-84
- IRQ\_Enable, API reference 4-84
- IRQ\_EVT\_NNNN, API reference 4-85
- IRQ\_Map 4-85
- IRQ\_Set, API reference 4-86
- IRQ\_SUPPORT, API reference 4-86
- IRQ\_Test, API reference 4-86
- IST, defined A-6

## L

- least significant bit (LSB), defined A-6
- linker, defined A-6
- little endian, defined A-6

## M

- m-law companding, defined A-7
- maskable interrupt, defined A-7
- MCBSP
  - API function table 3-9
  - API reference 4-87
  - defined A-7
  - module introduction 2-18
  - using a MCBSP port* 2-19
- MCBSP module, defined A-7
- MCBSP\_Close, API reference 4-87
- MCBSP\_CONFIG, API reference 4-87
- MCBSP\_ConfigA, API reference 4-88
- MCBSP\_ConfigB, API reference 4-89
- MCBSP\_EnableFsync, API reference 4-90
- MCBSP\_EnableRcv, API reference 4-90
- MCBSP\_EnableSrg, API reference 4-90
- MCBSP\_EnableXmt, API reference 4-91
- MCBSP\_GetPins, API reference 4-91
- MCBSP\_GetRcvAddr, API reference 4-92
- MCBSP\_GetRcvEventId, API reference 4-92

- MCBSP\_GetXmtAddr, API reference 4-92
- MCBSP\_GetXmtEventId, API reference 4-93
- MCBSP\_MK\_MCR, API reference 4-93
- MCBSP\_MK\_PCR, API reference 4-95
- MCBSP\_MK\_RCER, API reference 4-97
- MCBSP\_MK\_RCR, API reference 4-98
- MCBSP\_MK\_SPCR, API reference 4-101
- MCBSP\_MK\_SRGR, API reference 4-103
- MCBSP\_MK\_XCER, API reference 4-105
- MCBSP\_MK\_XCR, API reference 4-106
- MCBSP\_Open, API reference 4-108
- MCBSP\_PORT\_CNT, API reference 4-109
- MCBSP\_Read, API reference 4-109
- MCBSP\_Reset, API reference 4-109
- MCBSP\_Rfull, API reference 4-110
- MCBSP\_Rrdy, API reference 4-110
- MCBSP\_RsyncErr, API reference 4-111
- MCBSP\_SetPins, API reference 4-111
- MCBSP\_SUPPORT, API reference 4-112
- MCBSP\_Write, API reference 4-112
- MCBSP\_Xempty, API reference 4-112
- MCBSP\_Xrdy, API reference 4-113
- MCBSP\_XsyncErr, API reference 4-113
- memory map, defined A-7
- memory-mapped register, defined A-7
- MK macros 2-2
- most significant bit (MSB), defined A-7
- multichannel buffered serial port (McBSP), defined A-7
- multiplexer, defined A-7

## N

- NO, API reference 4-118
- nonmaskable interrupt (NMI), defined A-7

## O

- object file, defined A-7
- off chip, defined A-7
- on chip, defined A-7
- OPEN and CLOSE functions 2-2

## P

- peripheral, defined A-8



program cache, defined A-8  
 program memory, defined A-8  
 PWR  
   API function table 3-10  
   API reference 4-114  
   defined A-8  
   module introduction 2-20  
 PWR module, defined A-8  
 PWR\_ConfigB, API reference 4-114  
 PWR\_PDCTL, API reference 4-114  
 PWR\_PowerDown, API reference 4-115  
 PWR\_SUPPORT, API reference 4-116

## R

random-access memory (RAM), defined A-8  
 reduced-instruction-set computer (RISC), defined A-8  
 register, defined A-8  
 reset, defined A-8  
 RTOS, defined A-8

## S

service layer, defined A-8  
 service layer of CSL  
   API modules within 1-5  
   overview 1-5  
 STDINC  
   API reference 4-117  
   defined A-8  
   module introduction 2-21  
 STDINC module, defined A-9  
 synchronous dynamic random-access memory (SDRAM), defined A-9  
 synchronous-burst static random-access memory (SBSRAM), defined A-9  
 syntax, defined A-9  
 system software, defined A-9

## T

tag, defined A-9  
 TIMER  
   API function table 3-11

  API reference 4-119  
   module introduction 2-22  
     *using a TIMER device* 2-22  
   using a TIMER device 2-22  
 timer, defined A-9  
 TIMER module, defined A-9  
 TIMER\_Close, API reference 4-119  
 TIMER\_CONFIG, API reference 4-119  
 TIMER\_ConfigA, API reference 4-120  
 TIMER\_ConfigB, API reference 4-120  
 TIMER\_DEVICE\_CNT, API reference 4-121  
 TIMER\_GetCount, API reference 4-121  
 TIMER\_GetDatin, API reference 4-121  
 TIMER\_GetEventId, API reference 4-122  
 TIMER\_GetPeriod, API reference 4-122  
 TIMER\_GetTstat, API reference 4-122  
 TIMER\_MK\_CTL, API reference 4-123  
 TIMER\_Open, API reference 4-125  
 TIMER\_Pause, API reference 4-125  
 TIMER\_Reset, API reference 4-126  
 TIMER\_Resume, API reference 4-126  
 TIMER\_SetCount, API reference 4-126  
 TIMER\_SetDataout, API reference 4-127  
 TIMER\_SetPeriod, API reference 4-127  
 TIMER\_Start, API reference 4-127  
 TIMER\_SUPPORT, API reference 4-128  
 TRUE, API reference 4-118

## U

UINT16, API reference 4-118  
 UINT32, API reference 4-118  
 UINT40, API reference 4-118  
 UINT8, API reference 4-118

## W

word, defined A-9

## Y

YES, API reference 4-118

## *Index*

---